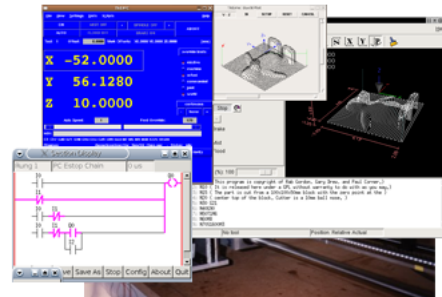




EMC²

The Enhanced Machine Controller



www.linuxcnc.org

V2.2 User Handbook

April 27, 2008

The EMC Team

This handbook is a work in progress. If you are able to help with writing, editing, or graphic preparation please contact any member of the writing team or join and send an email to emc-users@lists.sourceforge.net.

Copyright (c) 2000-7 LinuxCNC.org

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.1 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and one Back-Cover Text: "This EMC Handbook is the product of several authors writing for linuxCNC.org. As you find it to be of value in your work, we invite you to contribute to its revision and growth." A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License". If you do not find the license you may order a copy from Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330 Boston, MA 02111-1307

Contents

I	Introduction & installing EMC2	1
1	The Enhanced Machine Control	2
1.1	Introduction	2
1.2	The Big CNC Picture	2
1.3	Computer Operating Systems	3
1.4	History of the Software	3
1.5	How EMC2 Works	4
1.5.1	Graphical User Interfaces	5
1.5.2	Motion Controller EMCMOT	6
1.5.3	Discrete I/O Controller EMCIO	7
1.5.4	Task Executor EMCTASK	7
1.6	Thinking Like a Machine Operator	8
1.6.1	Modes of Operation	9
1.6.2	Information Display	11
1.7	Thinking Like An Integrator	12
1.7.1	Units	12
2	Installing the EMC2 software	13
2.1	Introduction	13
2.2	EMC Download Page	13
2.3	EMC2 Live CD	14
2.4	EMC2 install script	14
2.5	Manual installing using apt commands.	14
II	Configuring EMC2	16
3	Running EMC	17
3.1	Invoking emc	17
3.2	Configuration Selector	17
3.3	Next steps in configuration	18

4	Stepconf: Configure EMC2 for Step & Direction CNC Machines	19
4.1	Step by Step Instructions	19
4.1.1	Basic Information	19
4.1.2	Parallel Port Setup	22
4.1.3	Axis Configuration	23
4.1.4	Spindle Configuration	23
4.1.4.1	Spindle Speed Control	25
4.1.4.2	Spindle-synchronized motion (lathe threading)	25
4.1.5	Machine Configuration Complete	25
4.2	Finding Velocity and Acceleration	25
4.2.1	Finding Maximum Velocity	25
4.2.2	Finding Maximum Acceleration	26
4.3	Determining Spindle Calibration	26
4.4	Axis Travel, Home Location, and Home Switch Location	27
4.4.1	Operating without Limit Switches	27
4.4.2	Operating without Home Switches	27
4.5	Latency Test	28
4.6	Home and Limit Switch wiring options	29
5	INI Configuration	31
5.1	Files Used for Configuration	31
5.2	The INI File Layout	31
5.2.1	Comments	32
5.2.2	Sections	32
5.2.3	Variables	33
5.2.4	Definitions	33
5.3	INI Variable Definitions	33
5.3.1	[EMC] Section	33
5.3.2	[DISPLAY] Section	33
5.3.3	[EMCMOT] Section	34
5.3.4	[TASK] Section	35
5.3.5	[HAL] section	35
5.3.6	[TRAJ] Section	35
5.3.7	[AXIS_<num>] Section	36
5.3.7.1	Homing-related items	37
5.3.7.2	Servo-related items	37
5.3.7.3	Stepper-related items	39
5.3.8	[EMCIO] Section	40
5.4	Homing	41

5.4.1	Overview	41
5.4.2	Homing Sequence	41
5.4.3	Configuration	41
5.4.3.1	HOME_SEARCH_VEL	41
5.4.3.2	HOME_LATCH_VEL	41
5.4.3.3	HOME_IGNORE_LIMITS	43
5.4.3.4	HOME_USE_INDEX	43
5.4.3.5	HOME_OFFSET	43
5.4.3.6	HOME	43
5.4.3.7	HOME_IS_SHARED	43
5.4.3.8	HOME_SEQUENCE	43
6	Introduction	44
6.1	What is HAL?	44
6.1.1	HAL is based on traditional system design techniques	44
6.1.1.1	Part Selection	44
6.1.1.2	Interconnection Design	44
6.1.1.3	Implementation	45
6.1.1.4	Testing	45
6.1.2	Summary	45
6.2	HAL Concepts	46
6.3	HAL components	47
6.3.1	External Programs with HAL hooks	47
6.3.2	Internal Components	47
6.3.3	Hardware Drivers	48
6.3.4	Tools and Utilities	48
6.4	Tinkertoys, Erector Sets, Legos and the HAL	48
6.4.1	Tower	48
6.4.2	Erector Sets	48
6.4.3	Tinkertoys	49
6.4.4	A Lego Example	50
6.5	Timing Issues In HAL	50
7	HAL Tutorial	51
7.1	Before we start	51
7.1.1	Notation	51
7.1.2	The RTAPI environment	51
7.2	Tab-completion	52
7.3	A Simple Example	52

7.3.1	Loading a realtime component	52
7.3.2	Examining the HAL	52
7.3.3	Making realtime code run	54
7.3.4	Changing parameters	55
7.3.5	Saving the HAL configuration	55
7.3.6	Restoring the HAL configuration	56
7.4	Looking at the HAL with halmeter	56
7.4.1	Starting halmeter	56
7.4.2	Using halmeter	58
7.5	A slightly more complex example.	59
7.5.1	Installing the components	59
7.5.2	Connecting pins with signals	60
7.5.3	Setting up realtime execution - threads and functions	61
7.5.4	Setting parameters	62
7.5.5	Run it!	63
7.6	Taking a closer look with halscope.	63
7.6.1	Starting Halscope	63
7.6.2	Hooking up the “scope probes”	65
7.6.3	Capturing our first waveforms	66
7.6.4	Vertical Adjustments	67
7.6.5	Triggering	67
7.6.6	Horizontal Adjustments	69
7.6.7	More Channels	70
7.6.8	More samples	70
8	Hardware Drivers	71
8.1	Parport	71
8.1.1	Installing	71
8.1.2	Pins	72
8.1.3	Parameters	72
8.1.4	Functions	74
8.1.5	Common problems	74
8.2	probe_parport	74
8.2.1	Installing	74
8.3	AX5214H	75
8.3.1	Installing	75
8.3.2	Pins	75
8.3.3	Parameters	75
8.3.4	Functions	75

8.4	Servo-To-Go	76
8.4.1	Installing:	76
8.4.2	Pins	76
8.4.3	Parameters	77
8.4.4	Functions	77
8.5	Mesa Electronics m5i20 “Anything I/O Card”	77
8.5.1	Pins	78
8.5.2	Parameters	78
8.5.3	Functions	79
8.5.4	Connector pinout	79
8.5.4.1	Connector P2	80
8.5.4.2	Connector P3	80
8.5.4.3	Connector P4	81
8.5.4.4	LEDs	82
8.6	Vital Systems Motenc-100 and Motenc-LITE	82
8.6.1	Pins	83
8.6.2	Parameters	83
8.6.3	Functions	84
8.7	Pico Systems PPMC (Parallel Port Motion Control)	84
8.7.1	Pins	85
8.7.2	Parameters	85
8.7.3	Functions	86
8.8	Pluto-P: generalities	86
8.8.1	Requirements	86
8.8.2	Connectors	86
8.8.3	Physical Pins	87
8.8.4	LED	87
8.8.5	Power	87
8.8.6	PC interface	87
8.8.7	Rebuilding the FPGA firmware	87
8.8.8	For more information	88
8.9	pluto-servo: Hardware PWM and quadrature counting	88
8.9.1	Pinout	88
8.9.2	Input latching and output updating	89
8.9.3	HAL Functions, Pins and Parameters	89
8.9.4	Compatible driver hardware	89
8.10	Pluto-step: 300kHz Hardware Step Generator	91
8.10.1	Pinout	91
8.10.2	Input latching and output updating	91
8.10.3	Step Waveform Timings	91
8.10.4	HAL Functions, Pins and Parameters	93

III Using EMC2 94

9 Using the AXIS Graphical Interface	95
9.1 Introduction	95
9.2 Getting Started	95
9.2.1 A typical session with AXIS	95
9.3 Elements of the AXIS window	96
9.3.1 Toolbar buttons	97
9.3.2 Graphical Program Display Area	97
9.3.2.1 Coordinate Display	97
9.3.2.2 Preview Plot	98
9.3.2.3 Program Extents	98
9.3.2.4 Tool Cone	98
9.3.2.5 Backplot	98
9.3.2.6 Interacting with the display	98
9.3.3 Text Program Display Area	99
9.3.4 Manual Control	99
9.3.4.1 The “Axis” group	100
9.3.4.2 The “Spindle” group	100
9.3.4.3 The “Coolant” group	101
9.3.5 Code Entry	101
9.3.5.1 History	101
9.3.5.2 MDI Command	102
9.3.5.3 Active G-Codes	102
9.3.6 Feed Override	102
9.3.7 Spindle Speed Override	102
9.3.8 Jog Speed	102
9.4 Keyboard Controls	102
9.5 emctop: Show EMC Status	102
9.6 mdi: Text-mode MDI interface	103
9.7 axis-remote: Send remote commands to the AXIS GUI	103
9.8 hal_manualtoolchange: Prompt the user to exchange tools	103
9.9 Python modules	105
9.10 Using AXIS to control a CNC Lathe	105
9.11 Advanced configuration of AXIS	105
9.11.1 Program Filters	105
9.11.2 The X Resource Database	106
9.11.3 Physical jog wheels	107
9.11.4 ~/.axisrc	107
9.11.5 External Editor	107
9.11.6 Virtual Control Panel	108

10 Using the TkEMC Graphical Interface	109
10.1 Introduction	109
10.2 Getting Started	109
10.2.1 A typical session with TkEMC	110
10.3 Elements of the TkEMC window	110
10.3.1 Main buttons	111
10.3.2 Offset display status bar	111
10.3.3 Coordinate Display Area	111
10.3.3.1 Backplot	111
10.3.4 Automatic control	112
10.3.4.1 Buttons for control	112
10.3.4.2 Text Program Display Area	112
10.3.5 Manual Control	112
10.3.5.1 Implicit keys	112
10.3.5.2 The “Spindle” group	113
10.3.5.3 The “Coolant” group	113
10.3.6 Code Entry	113
10.3.6.1 MDI:	113
10.3.6.2 Active G-Codes	113
10.3.7 Jog Speed	114
10.3.8 Feed Override	114
10.3.9 Spindle speed Override	114
10.4 Keyboard Controls	114
11 Using The MINI Graphical Interface	115
11.1 Introduction	115
11.2 Screen layout	116
11.3 Menu Bar	116
11.4 Control Button Bar	118
11.4.1 MANUAL	118
11.4.2 AUTO	119
11.4.3 MDI	120
11.4.4 [FEEDHOLD] – [CONTINUE]	120
11.4.5 [ABORT]	120
11.4.6 [ESTOP]	120
11.5 Left Column	121
11.5.1 Axis Position Displays	121
11.5.2 Feed rate Override	122
11.5.3 Messages	122

11.6	Right Column	122
11.6.1	Program Editor	122
11.6.2	Backplot Display	123
11.6.3	Tool Page	123
11.6.4	Offset Page	124
11.7	Keyboard Bindings	124
11.7.1	Common Keys	124
11.7.2	Manual Mode	125
11.7.3	Auto Mode	126
11.8	Misc	126
12	Machining Center Overview	127
12.1	Mechanical Components	127
12.1.1	Axes	127
12.1.1.1	Primary Linear Axes	127
12.1.1.2	Secondary Linear Axes	128
12.1.1.3	Rotational Axes	128
12.1.2	Spindle	128
12.1.3	Coolant	128
12.1.4	Pallet Shuttle	128
12.1.5	Tool Carousel	128
12.1.6	Tool Changer	128
12.1.7	Message Display	128
12.1.8	Feed and Speed Override Switches	128
12.1.9	Block Delete Switch	129
12.1.10	Optional Program Stop Switch	129
12.2	Control and Data Components	129
12.2.1	Linear Axes	129
12.2.2	Rotational Axes	129
12.2.3	Controlled Point	129
12.2.4	Coordinated Linear Motion	129
12.2.5	Feed Rate	130
12.2.6	Coolant	130
12.2.7	Dwell	130
12.2.8	Units	130
12.2.9	Current Position	130
12.2.10	Selected Plane	131
12.2.11	Tool Carousel	131
12.2.12	Tool Change	131

12.2.13	Pallet Shuttle	131
12.2.14	Feed and Speed Override Switches	131
12.2.15	Path Control Mode	131
12.3	Interpreter Interaction with Switches	131
12.3.1	Feed and Speed Override Switches	132
12.3.2	Block Delete Switch	132
12.3.3	Optional Program Stop Switch	132
12.4	Tool File	132
12.4.1	Mill Format Tool Files	132
12.4.2	Lathe Format Tool Files	133
12.5	Parameters	133
12.6	Coordinate Systems	135
13	Language Overview	136
13.1	Format of a line	136
13.2	Line Number	137
13.3	Word	137
13.3.1	Number	137
13.3.2	Numbered Parameters	138
13.3.3	Named Parameters	138
13.3.4	Expressions	139
13.3.5	Binary Operators	139
13.3.6	Functions	140
13.4	Comments	140
13.4.1	Messages	140
13.4.2	Probe Logging	141
13.4.3	General logging	141
	13.4.3.1(LOGOPEN,filename)	141
	13.4.3.2(LOGCLOSE)	141
	13.4.3.3(LOG,...)	141
13.4.4	Debugging messages	141
13.4.5	Parameters in special comments	141
13.5	Repeated Items	142
13.6	Item order	142
13.7	Commands and Machine Modes	142
13.8	Modal Groups	142

14 G Codes	144
14.1 G0: Rapid Linear Motion	144
14.2 G1: Linear Motion at Feed Rate	145
14.3 G2, G3: Arc at Feed Rate	145
14.3.1 Center format arcs (preferred format)	145
14.3.2 Radius format arcs (discouraged format)	146
14.4 G33, G33.1: Spindle-Synchronized Motion	147
14.5 G4: Dwell	147
14.6 G10: Set Coordinate System Data	148
14.7 G17, G18, G19: Plane Selection	148
14.8 G20, G21: Length Units	148
14.9 G28, G30: Return to Predefined Absolute Position	148
14.10 G38.x: Straight Probe	149
14.11 G40, G41, G42, G41.1, G42.1: Cutter Radius Compensation.	149
14.11.1 Cutter Radius Compensation from Tool Table	150
14.11.2 Dynamic Cutter Radius Compensation	150
14.12 G43, G43.1, G49: Tool Length Offsets	150
14.12.1 G43, G43.1: Activate Tool length compensation	150
14.12.1.G43: Offsets from tool table	150
14.12.1.G43.1: Dynamic tool compensation	151
14.12.2 G49: Cancel tool length compensation	151
14.13 G53: Move in absolute coordinates	151
14.14 G54 to G59.3: Select Coordinate System	151
14.15 G61, G61.1, G64: Set Path Control Mode	151
14.16 G80: Cancel Modal Motion	152
14.17 G76: Threading Canned Cycle	152
14.18 G81 to G89: Canned Cycles	153
14.18.1 Preliminary and In-Between Motion	154
14.18.2 G81: Drilling Cycle	155
14.18.3 G82: Drilling Cycle with Dwell	156
14.18.4 G83: Peck Drilling	156
14.18.5 G84: Right-Hand Tapping	156
14.18.6 G85: Boring, No Dwell, Feed Out	156
14.18.7 G86: Boring, Spindle Stop, Rapid Out	157
14.18.8 G87: Back Boring	157
14.18.9 G88: Boring, Spindle Stop, Manual Out	157
14.18.10 G89: Boring, Dwell, Feed Out	157
14.18.11 G90, G91: Set Distance Mode	157
14.19 G92, G92.1, G92.2, G92.3: Coordinate System Offsets	158
14.20 G93, G94, G95: Set Feed Rate Mode	158
14.21 G96, G97: Spindle control mode	159
14.22 G98, G99: Set Canned Cycle Return Level	159

15 M Codes	160
15.1 M0, M1, M2, M30, M60: Program Stopping and Ending	160
15.2 M3, M4, M5: Spindle Control	161
15.3 M6: Tool Change	161
15.4 M7, M8, M9: Coolant Control	161
15.5 M48, M49: Override Control	161
15.6 M50: Feed Override Control	162
15.7 M51: Spindle Speed Override Control	162
15.8 M52: Adaptive Feed Control	162
15.9 M53: Feed Stop Control	162
15.10 M62 to M65: Digital Output Control	162
15.11 M66: Digital Input Control	162
15.12 M100 to M199: User Defined Commands	163
16 O Codes	164
16.1 Subroutines: “sub”, “endsub”, “return”, “call”	164
16.2 Looping: “do”, “while”, “endwhile”, “break”, “continue”	165
16.3 Conditional: “if”, “else”, “endif”	165
16.4 Indirection	165
16.5 Computing values in O-words	165
17 Other Codes	166
17.1 F: Set Feed Rate	166
17.2 S: Set Spindle Speed	166
17.3 T: Select Tool	166
18 Order of Execution	168
19 G-Code Best Practices	169
19.1 Use an appropriate decimal precision	169
19.2 Use consistent white space	169
19.3 Prefer “Center-format” arcs	169
19.4 Put important modal settings at the top of the file	169
19.5 Don’t put too many things on one line	170
19.6 Don’t use line numbers	170
19.7 When moving more than one coordinate system, consider inverse time feed mode . .	170
20 Tool File and Compensation	171
20.1 Tool File	171
20.2 Tool Compensation	171
20.3 Tool Length Offsets	171
20.4 Cutter Radius Compensation	172
20.4.1 Cutter Radius Compensation Detail	172
20.5 Tool Compensation Sources	180

21 Differences between EMC2 gcode and RS274NGC	181
21.1 Differences that change the meaning of well-formed RS274NGC programs	181
21.1.1 Location after a tool change	181
21.1.2 Offset parameters are ininfile units	181
21.1.3 Tool table lengths/diameters are in ininfile units	181
21.1.4 G84, G87 not implemented	181
21.1.5 G28, G30 with axis words	181
21.1.6 M62, M63 not implemented	182
21.1.7 G0 reduces long angular motions to be less than one revolution	182
21.2 Differences that do not change the meaning of well-formed RS274NGC programs . . .	182
21.2.1 G33, G76 threading codes	182
21.2.2 G38.2	182
21.2.3 G38.3... G38.5	182
21.2.4 O-codes	182
21.2.5 M50... M53 overrides	182
21.2.6 G43, G43.1	182
21.2.6.1 Negative Tool Lengths	182
21.2.6.2 Lathe tools	182
21.2.6.3 Dynamic tool lengths	183
21.2.7 G41.1, G42.1	183
21.2.8 G43 without H word	183
21.2.9 U, V, and W axes	183
22 Coordinate System and G92 Offsets	184
22.1 Introduction	184
22.2 The Machine Position Command (G53)	184
22.3 Fixture Offsets (G54-G59.3)	184
22.3.1 Default coordinate system	186
22.3.2 Setting coordinate system values within G-code.	186
22.4 G92 Offsets	186
22.4.1 The G92 commands	187
22.4.2 Setting G92 values	187
22.4.3 G92 Cautions	188
22.5 Sample Program Using Offsets	188

23 Canned Cycles	190
23.1 Preliminary Motion	190
23.2 G80	191
23.3 G81 Cycle	192
23.4 G82 Cycle	194
23.5 G83 Cycle	195
23.6 G84 Cycle	195
23.7 G85 Cycle	196
23.8 G86 Cycle	196
23.9 G87 Cycle	196
23.10 G88 Cycle	198
23.11 G89 Cycle	198
23.12 G98 G99	198
23.13 Why use a canned cycle?	199
24 Image-to-gcode: Milling “depth maps”	201
24.1 What is a depth map?	201
24.2 Integrating image-to-gcode with the AXIS user interface	201
24.3 Using image-to-gcode	202
24.4 Option Reference	202
24.4.1 Units	202
24.4.2 Invert Image	202
24.4.3 Normalize Image	202
24.4.4 Expand Image Border	202
24.4.5 Tolerance (units)	202
24.4.6 Pixel Size (units)	203
24.4.7 Plunge Feed Rate (units per minute)	203
24.4.8 Feed Rate (units per minute)	203
24.4.9 Spindle Speed (RPM)	203
24.4.10 Scan Pattern	203
24.4.11 Scan Direction	203
24.4.12 Depth (units)	203
24.4.13 Step Over (pixels)	203
24.4.14 Tool Diameter	204
24.4.15 Safety Height	204
24.4.16 Tool Type	204
24.4.17 Lace bounding	204
24.4.18 Contact angle	204
24.4.19 Roughing offset and depth per pass	204

A Glossary of Common Terms Used in the EMC Documents	206
B Legal Section	210
B.1 GNU Free Documentation License Version 1.1, March 2000	210
B.1.1 GNU Free Documentation License Version 1.1, March 2000	210

Part I

Introduction & installing EMC2

Chapter 1

The Enhanced Machine Control

1.1 Introduction

This book is intended for people who want to use the Enhanced Machine Controller to run a mill, lathe, router, or to control some other rather standard kind of machine. Computer Numerical Control or CNC is the general term used to name this kind of computer application. In order to get right into the essential task of operating it we have limited the amount of information about installation and setup. We assume that the user will install one of the standard ways (covered in Chapter 2). Machine wiring and setup is limited to what we refer to as a mini or benchtop mill that is powered by stepper motors and amps that use a single parallel port.

If the user is interested in developing their own install using some other distribution of Linux or another operating system, or applying the EMC2 to a more complex machine, they should study the Integrators Handbook where these topics are covered in greater detail.

1.2 The Big CNC Picture

The term CNC has taken on a lot of different meanings over the years. In the early days CNC replaced the hands of a skilled machinist with motors that followed commands in much the same way that the machinist turned the handwheels. From these early machines, a language of machine tool control has grown. This language is called RS274 and several standard variants of it have been put forward. It has also been expanded by machine tool and control builders in order to meet the needs of specific machines. If a machine changed tools during a program it needed to have tool change commands. If it changed pallets in order to load new castings, it had to have commands that allowed for these kinds of devices as well. Like any language, RS274 has evolved over time. Currently there are several dialects. In general each machine tool maker has been consistent within their product line but different dialects can have commands that cause quite different behavior from one machine to another.

More recently the language of CNC has been hidden behind or side-stepped by several programming schemes that are referred to as “Conversational¹ programming languages.” One common feature of these kinds of programming schemes is the selection of a shape or geometry and the addition of values for the corners, limits, or features of that geometry.

The use of Computer Aided Drafting has also had an effect on the CNC programming languages. Because CAD drawings are saved as a list or database of geometries and variables associated with each, they are available to be interpreted into G-Code. These interpreters are called CAM (Computer Aided Machining) programs.

¹One machine tool manufacturer, Hurco, claims to have a right to the use of these programming schemes and to the use of the term conversational when used in this context.

Like the CAD converters, the rise of drawing programs, like Corel™ and the whole bunch of paint programs, converters have been written that will take a bitmap or raster or vector image and turn it into G-Code that can be run with a CNC.

You're asking yourself, "Why did I want to know this?" The answer is that the EMC2 as it currently exists does not directly take in CAD or any image and run a machine using it. The EMC2 uses a variant of the earlier CNC language named RS274NGC. (Next Generation Controller). All of the commands given to the EMC2 must be in a form that is recognized and have meaning to the RS274NGC interpreter. This means that if you want to carve parts that were drawn in some graphical or drafting program you will also have to find a converter that will transform the image or geometry list into commands that are acceptable to the EMC2 interpreter. Several commercial CAD/CAM programs are available to do this conversion. At least one converter (Ace) has been written that carries a copyright that makes it available to the public.

There has been recent talk about writing a "conversational" or geometric interface that would allow an operator to enter programs in much the same way that several modern proprietary controls enter programs but it isn't in there yet.

1.3 Computer Operating Systems

The EMC2 code can be compiled on almost any GNU-Linux Distribution (assuming it has been patched with a real time extension). In addition to the raw code, some binary distributions are available. The latest packages have been created around the Ubuntu GNU-Linux Distribution. Ubuntu is one of the distributions that is aimed at novice Linux users, and has been found to be very easy to use. Along with that, there are lots of places around the world that offer support for it. Installing EMC2 on it is trivial, see section 2.3

The EMC2 will not run under a Microsoft (TM) operating system. The reason for this is that the EMC2 requires a real-time environment for the proper operation of its motion planning and stepper pulse outputs. Along with that, it also benefits from the much-needed stability and performance of the Linux OS.

1.4 History of the Software

The EMC code was started by the Intelligent Systems Division at the National Institute of Standards and Technology in the United States. The quotation below, taken from the NIST web presence some time back, should lend some understanding of the essential reasons for the existence of this software and of the NIST involvement in it.

As part of our (NIST) collaboration with the OMAC User's Group, we have written software which implements real-time control of equipment such as machine tools, robots, and coordinate measuring machines. The goal of this software development is twofold: first, to provide complete software implementations of all OMAC modules for the purpose of validating application programming interfaces; and second, to provide a vehicle for the transfer of control technology to small- and medium-sized manufacturers via the NIST Manufacturing Extension Partnership. The EMC software is based on the NIST Real-time Control System (RCS) Methodology, and is programmed using the NIST RCS Library. The RCS Library eases the porting of controller code to a variety of Unix and Microsoft platforms, providing a neutral application programming interface (API) to operating system resources such as shared memory, semaphores, and timers. The RCS Library also implements a communication model, the Neutral Manufacturing Language, which allows control processes to read and write C++ data structures throughout a single homogeneous environment or a heterogeneous networked environment. The EMC software is written in C and C++, and has been ported to the PC Linux, Windows NT, and Sun Solaris operating

systems. When running actual equipment, a real-time version of Linux is used to achieve the deterministic computation rates required (200 microseconds is typical). The software can also be run entirely in simulation, down to simulations of the machine motors. This enables entire factories of EMC machines to be set up and run in a computer integrated manufacturing environment.

EMC has been installed on many machines, both with servo motors and stepper motors. Here is a sampling of the earliest applications.

- 3-axis Bridgeport knee mill at Shaver Engineering. The machine uses DC brush servo motors and encoders for motion control, and OPTO-22 compatible I/O interfaced to the PC parallel port for digital I/O to the spindle, coolant, lube, and e-stop systems.
- 3-axis desktop milling machine used for prototype development. The machine uses DC brush servo motors and encoders. Spindle control is accomplished using the 4th motion control axis. The machine cuts wax parts.
- 4-axis Kearney & Trecker horizontal machining center at General Motors Powertrain in Pontiac, MI. This machine ran a precursor to the full-software EMC which used a hardware motion control board.

After these early tests, Jon Elson found the Shaver Engineering notes and replaced a refrigerator sized Allen Bradley 7300 control on his Bridgeport with the EMC running on a Red Hat 5.2 distribution of Linux. He was so pleased with the result that he advertised the software on several newsgroups. He continues to use that installation and has produced several boards that are supported by the software.

From these early applications news of the software spread around the world. It is now used to control many different kinds of machines. More recently the Sherline company <http://www.sherline.com> has released their first CNC mill. It uses a standard release of the EMC.

The source code files that make up the controller are kept in a repository on <http://cvs.linuxcnc.org>. They are available for anyone to inspect or download. The EMC2 source code (with a few exceptions²) is released under the GNU General Public License (GPL). The GPL controls the terms under which EMC2 can be changed and distributed. This is done in order to protect the rights of people like you to use, study, adapt, improve, and redistribute it freely, now and in the future. To read about your rights as a user of EMC2, and the terms under which you are allowed to distribute any modifications you may make, see the full GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/gpl.html>.

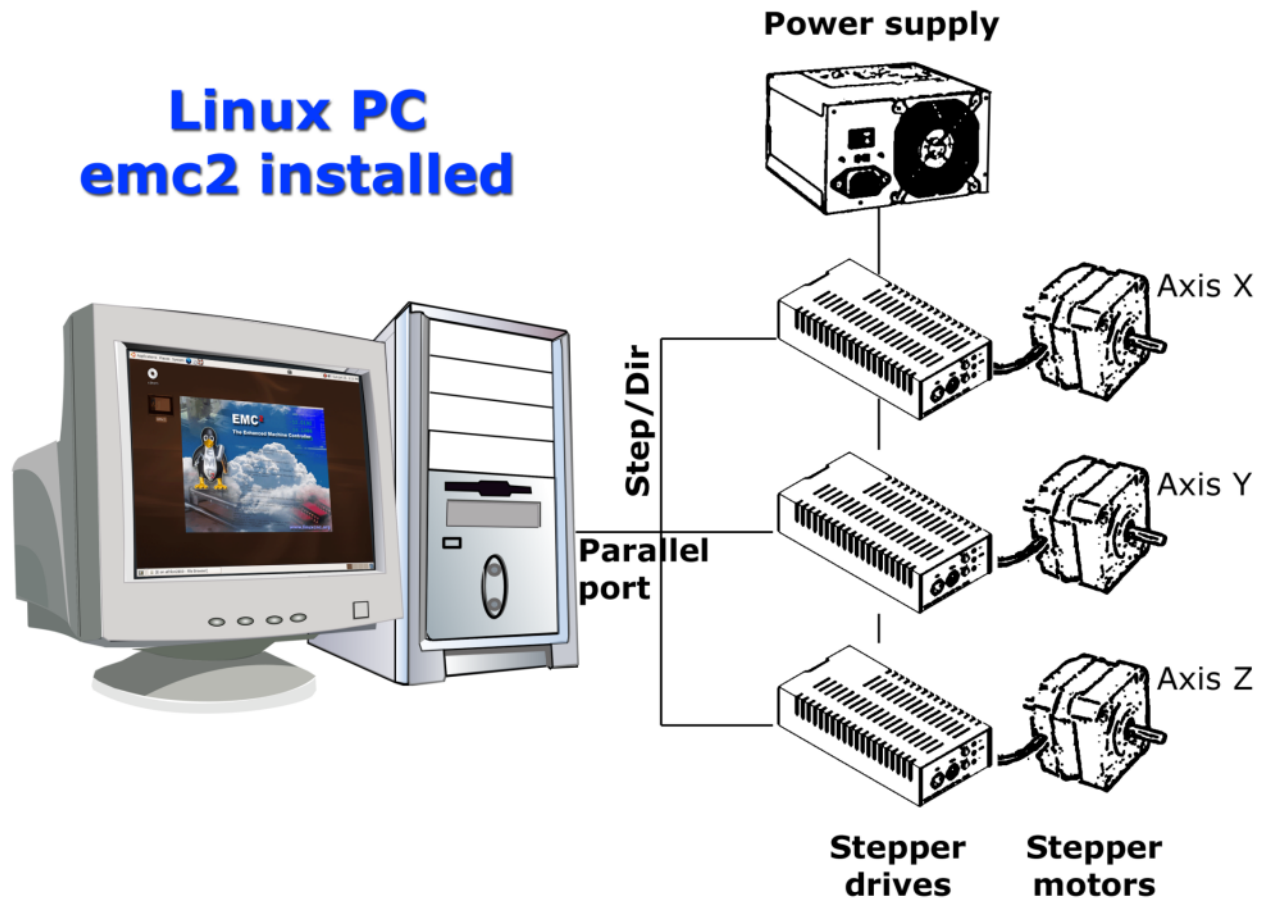
1.5 How EMC2 Works

The Enhanced Machine Controller (EMC2) is a lot more than just another CNC mill program. It can control machine tools, robots, or other automated devices. It can control servo motors, stepper motors, relays, and other devices related to machine tools. In this handbook we focus on only a small part of that awesome capability, the minimill.

Figure 1.1 shows a simple block diagram showing what a typical 3-axis EMC2 system might look like. This diagram shows a stepper motor system. The PC, running Linux as its operating system, is actually controlling the stepper motor drives by sending signals through the printer port. These signals (pulses) make the stepper drives move the stepper motors. The EMC2 can also run servo motors via servo interface cards or by using an extended parallel port to connect with external control boards. As we examine each of the components that make up an EMC2 system we will remind the reader of this typical machine.

²some parts of EMC2 are released under the “Lesser” GPL (LGPL), which allows them to be used with proprietary software as long as certain restrictions are observed.

Figure 1.1: Simple EMC2 Controlled Machine



There are four main components to the EMC2 software: a motion controller (EMCMOT), a discrete I/O controller (EMCIO), a task executor which coordinates them (EMCTASK), and a collection of text-based or graphical user interfaces. An EMC2 capable of running a minimill must start some version of all four of these components in order to completely control it. Each component is briefly described below. In addition there is a layer called HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer) which allows simple reconfiguration of EMC2 without the need of recompiling.

1.5.1 Graphical User Interfaces

A graphical interface is the part of the EMC2 that the machine tool operator interacts with. The EMC2 comes with several types of user interfaces:

- a character-based screen graphics program named *keystick* [1.3](#)
- an X Windows programs named *xemc* [1.6](#)
- two Tcl/Tk-based GUIs named *tkemc* [1.5](#) and *mini* [1.4](#).
- an OpenGL-based GUI, with an interactive G-Code previewer, called *AXIS* [1.2](#)

Tkemc and Mini will run on Linux, Mac, and Microsoft Windows if the Tcl/Tk programming language has been installed. The Mac and Microsoft Windows version can connect to a real-time EMC2 running on a Linux machine via a network connection, allowing the monitoring of the machine

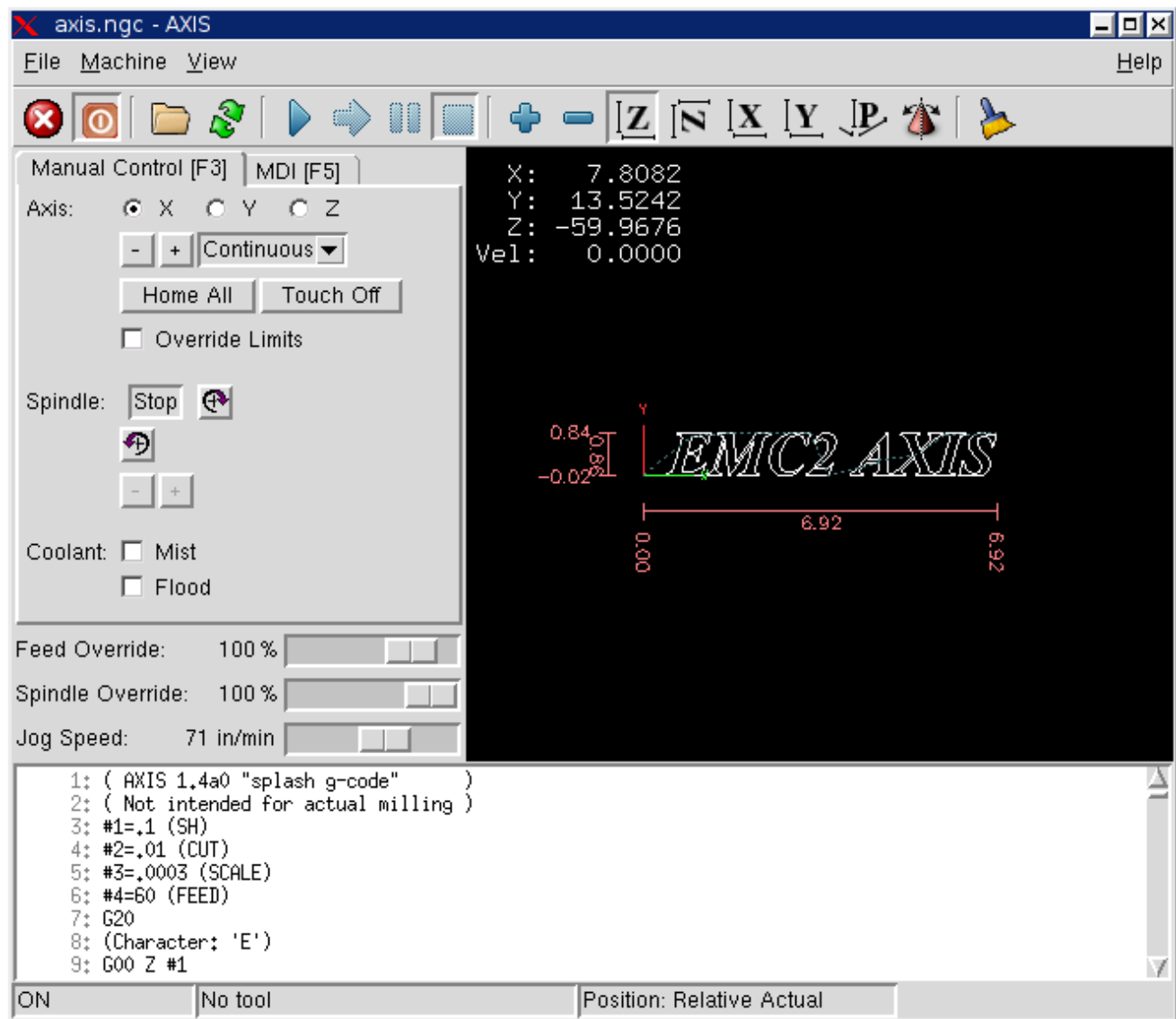


Figure 1.2: The AXIS Graphical Interface

from a remote location. Instructions for installing and configuring the connection between a Mac or Microsoft Machine and a PC running the EMC2 can be found in the Integrators Handbook.

1.5.2 Motion Controller EMCMOT

Motion control includes sampling the position of the axes to be controlled, computing the next point on the trajectory, interpolating between these trajectory points, and computing an output to the motors. For servo systems, the output is based on a PID compensation algorithm. For stepper systems, the calculations run open-loop, and pulses are sent to the steppers based on whether their accumulated position is more than a pulse away from their commanded position. The motion controller includes programmable software limits, and interfaces to hardware limit and home switches.

The motion controller is written to be fairly generic. Initialization files (with the same syntax as Microsoft Windows INI files) are used to configure parameters such as number and type of axes (e.g., linear or rotary), scale factors between feedback devices (e.g., encoder counts) and axis units (e.g., millimeters), servo gains, servo and trajectory planning cycle times, and other system parameters.

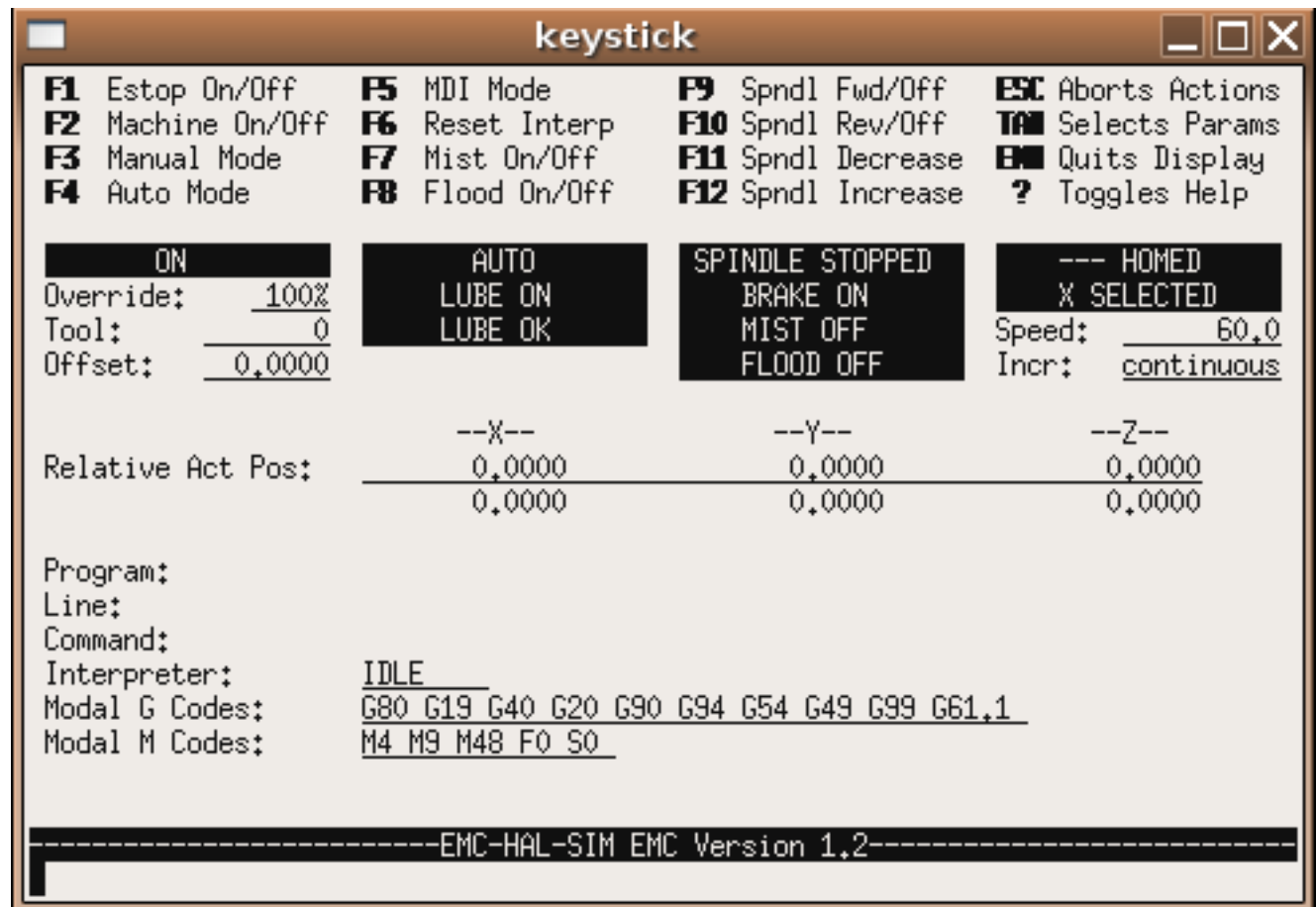


Figure 1.3: The Keystick interface

Complex kinematics for robots can be coded in C according to a prescribed interface to replace the default 3-axis Cartesian machine kinematics routines.

1.5.3 Discrete I/O Controller EMCIO

Discrete I/O controllers are highly machine-specific, and are not customizable in general using the INI file technique used to configure the more generic motion controller. However, since EMC2 uses the HAL, reconfiguration of the I/O subsystem has become very powerful and flexible. EMC2 contains a Programmable Logic Controller module (behaves just like a hardware PLC) that can be used for very complex scenarios (tool changers, etc.).

In EMC2 there is only one big I/O controller, which provides support for all kinds of actions and hardware control. All its outputs and inputs are HAL pins (more on this later on), so you can use only the subset that fits your hardware and is necessary for your application.

1.5.4 Task Executor EMCTASK

The Task Executor is responsible for interpreting G and M code programs whose behavior does not vary appreciably between machines. G-code programming is designed to work like a machinist might work. The motion or turns of a handwheel are coded into blocks. If a machinist wanted his mill to move an inch in the +X direction at some feed rate, he might slowly turn the handwheel five turns clockwise in 20 seconds. The same machinist programming that same move for CNC might write the following block of code.

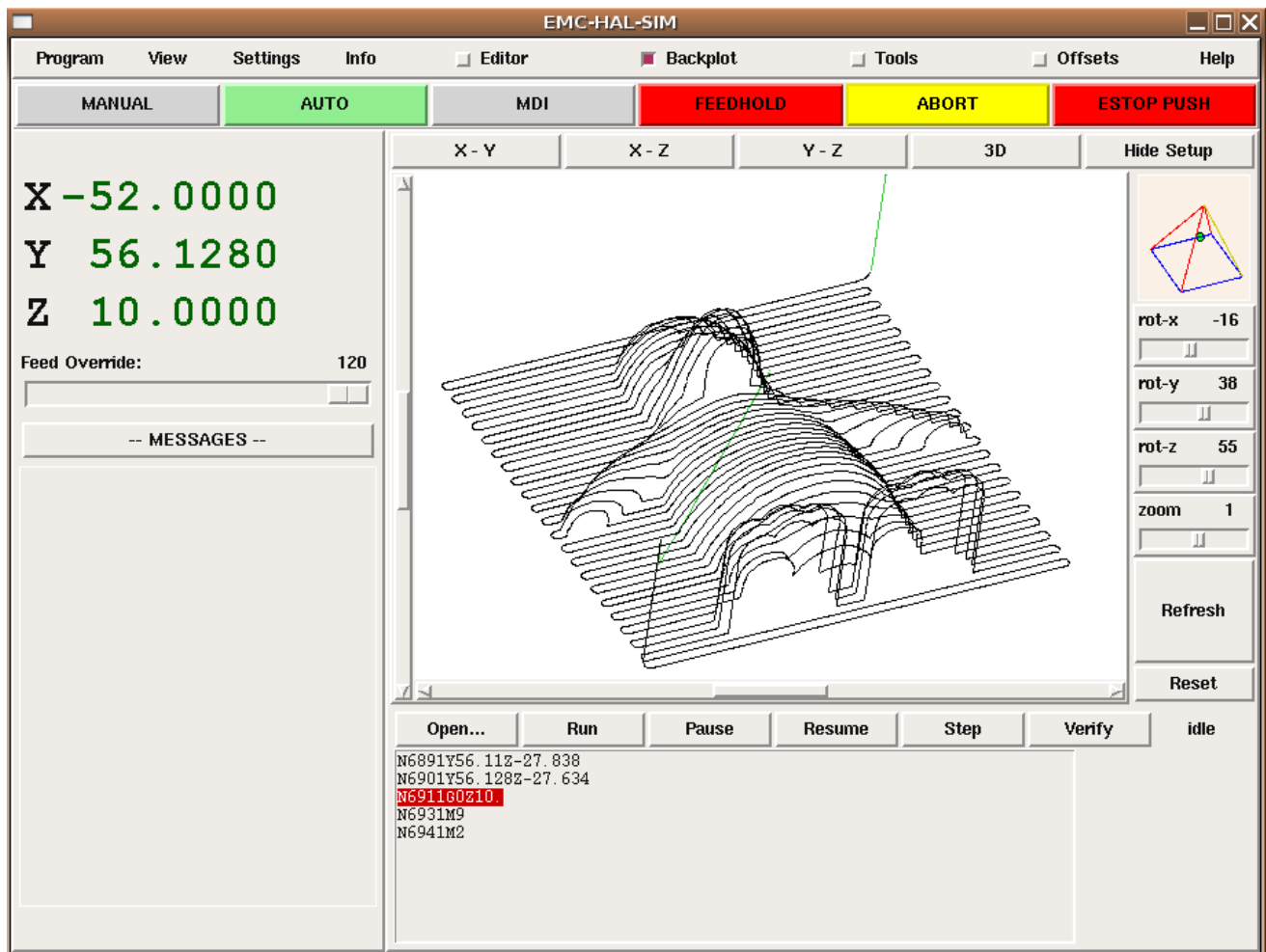


Figure 1.4: The Mini Graphical Interface

```
G1 F3 X1.000
```

G1 means that the machine is supposed to run at a programmed feed rate rather than at the fastest speed that it can (G0 is the way to command a rapid move like you would make above the work when not cutting). The F3 means that it should travel at 3 inches a minute or 3 millimeters a minute if it is working in metric mode. The X1.000 (assuming that the X axis started at zero) means the machine should move one inch in the positive X direction. You will read quite a bit more about G-code in the programming chapters .

Figure 1.7 is a block diagram of how a personal computer running the EMC2 is used to control a machine with G-code. The actual G-code can be sent using the MDI (Machine Device Interface) mode or it can be sent as a file when the machine is in Auto mode. These choices are made by the operator and entered using one of the Graphical User Interfaces available with the software.

G-code is sent to the interpreter which compares the new block with what has already been sent to it. The interpreter then figures out what needs to be done for the motion and input or output systems and sends blocks of canonical commands to the task and motion planning programs.

1.6 Thinking Like a Machine Operator

This book will not even pretend that it can teach you to run a mill or a lathe. Becoming a machinist takes time and hard work. An author once said, “We learn from experience, if at all.” Broken tools,

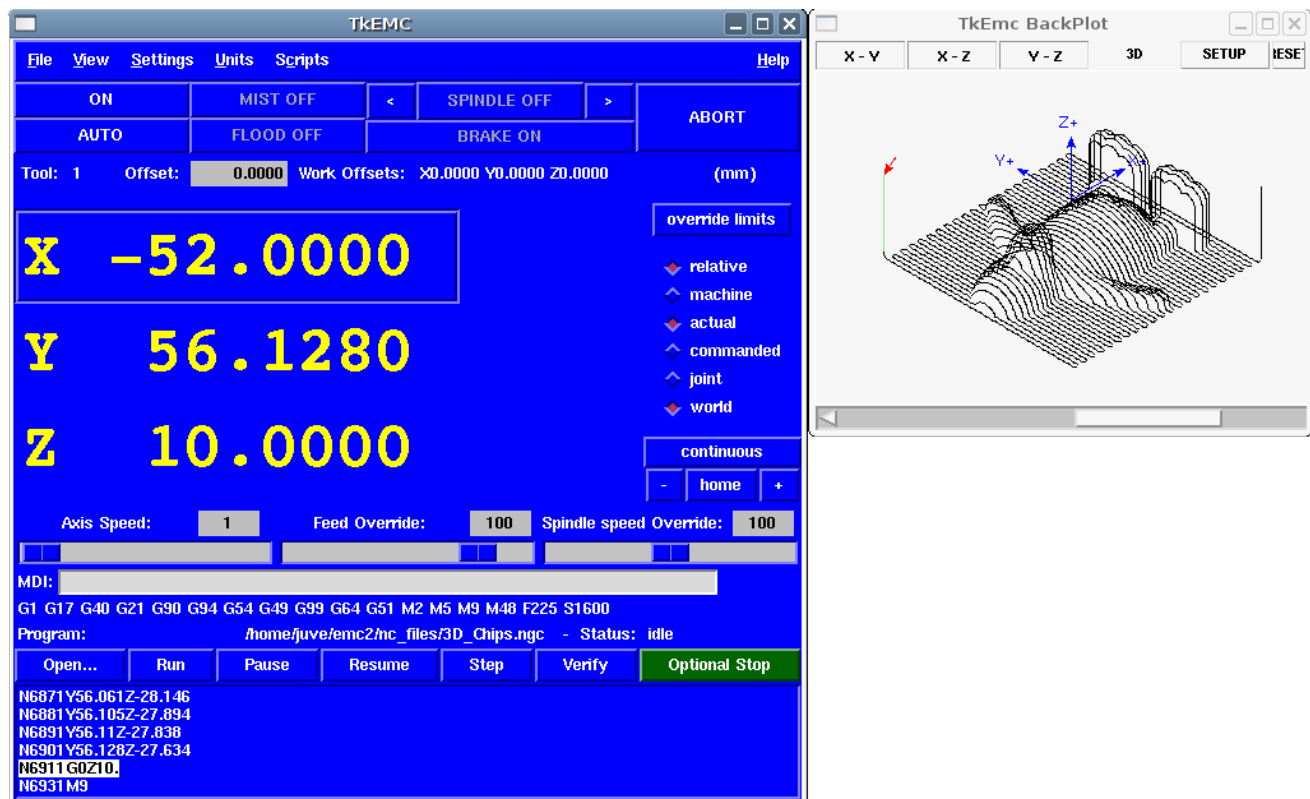


Figure 1.5: The TkEmc Graphical Interface

gouged vices, and scars are the evidence of lessons taught. Good part finish, close tolerances, and careful work are the evidence of lessons learned. No machine, no computer program, can take the place of human experience.

As you begin to work with the EMC2 program, you will need to place yourself in the position of operator. You need to think of yourself in the role of the one in charge of a machine. It is a machine that is either waiting for your command or executing the command that you have just given it. Throughout these pages we will give information that will help you become a good operator of the EMC2 mill. You will need some information right up front here so that the following pages will make sense to you.

1.6.1 Modes of Operation

When an EMC2 is running, there are three different major modes used for inputting commands. These are Manual, Auto, and MDI. Changing from one mode to another makes a big difference in the way that the EMC2 behaves. There are specific things that can be done in one mode that can not be done in another. An operator can home an axis in manual mode but not in auto or MDI modes. An operator can cause the machine to execute a whole file full of G-codes in the auto mode but not in manual or MDI.

In manual mode, each command is entered separately. In human terms a manual command might be “turn on coolant” or “jog X at 25 inches per minute.” These are roughly equivalent to flipping a switch or turning the handwheel for an axis. These commands are normally handled on one of the graphical interfaces by pressing a button with the mouse or holding down a key on the keyboard. In auto mode, a similar button or key press might be used to load or start the running of a whole program of G-code that is stored in a file. In the MDI mode the operator might type in a block of code and tell the machine to execute it by pressing the <return> or <enter> key on the keyboard.

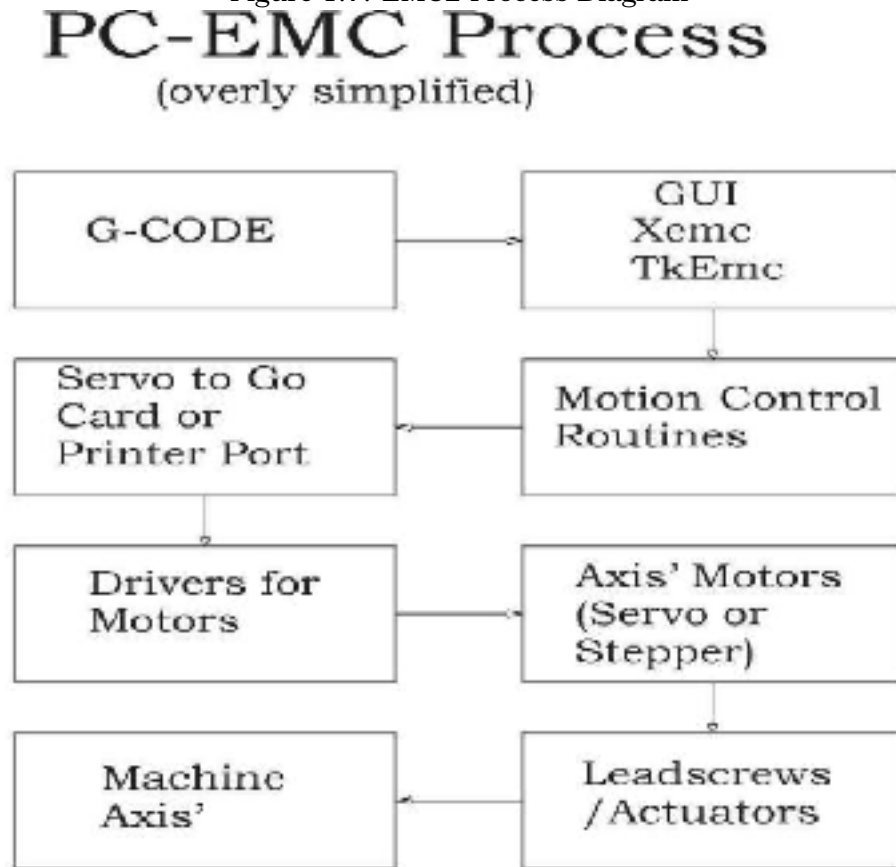


Figure 1.6: The XEMC Graphical Interface

Some motion control commands are available and will cause the same changes in motion in all modes. These include ABORT, ESTOP, and FEED RATE OVERRIDE. Commands like these should be self explanatory.

The AXIS user interface removes some of the distinctions between Auto and the other modes by making Auto-commands available at most times. It also blurs the distinction between Manual and MDI because some Manual commands like Touch Off are actually implemented by sending MDI commands.

Figure 1.7: EMC2 Process Diagram



1.6.2 Information Display

While an EMC2 is running, each of the modules keeps up a conversation with the others and with the graphical display. It is up to the display to select from that stream of information what the operator needs to see, and to arrange it on the screen in a way that makes it easy for the operator to understand. Perhaps the most important display is the mode the EMC2 is running in. You will want to keep your eye on the mode display.

Right up there with knowing what mode is active is consistent display of the position of each axis. Most of the interfaces will allow the operator to read position based upon actual or commanded position as well as machine or relative position.

Machine This is the position of an axis relative to the place where it started or was homed.

Relative This is the position of an axis after work or tool or other offsets have been applied.

Actual This is the real position of the axis within the machine or relative system.

Commanded This is where the axis is commanded to be.

These may all be exactly the same if no offsets have been applied and there is no deadband set in the INI file. Deadband is a small distance which is assumed to be close enough – perhaps one stepper pulse or one encoder count.

It is also important to see any messages or error codes sent by the EMC2. These are used to request the operator change a tool, to describe problems in G-code programs, or to tell why the machine stopped running.

As you work your way through this text, you will be learning, bit by bit, how to set up and run a machine with your copy of the EMC2 software. While you are learning about setting up and running a minimill here, you will be thinking of other applications and other capabilities. These are the topics of the other linuxcnc.org handbooks.

1.7 Thinking Like An Integrator

The biggest task of a machine integrator is figuring out how to connect a PC running the EMC2 to a machine and configuring the software so that it runs the machine correctly. Most of this is not the topic of this book, but there are a few things that you will have to understand in order to make our little minimill work for us like we expect it to work.

1.7.1 Units

Units can be confusing. You might ask, “Does it work in inches, feet, centimeters, millimeters, or what?” There are several possible answers to this question but the best one is that it works in the units that you set it to work in.

At a machine level, we set each axis’s units to some value using an INI variable that looks like this.

```
UNITS = inch
```

or

```
UNITS = mm
```

After we have decided upon a value for the units for an axis, we tell the EMC2 how many step pulses or encoder pulses it should send or read for each unit of distance to be traveled. Once we have done this, the EMC2 knows how to count units of distance. However it is very important to understand that this counting of distance is different from the commanding of distance. You can command distance in millimeters or inches without even thinking about the units that you defined. There are G-codes that allow you to switch easily between metric and imperial.

Chapter 2

Installing the EMC2 software

2.1 Introduction

One of the problems users often complained about EMC was installing the software itself. They were forced to get sources, and compile themselves, and try to set up a RT-patched Linux, etc. The developers of EMC2 chose to go with a standard distribution called Ubuntu¹.

Ubuntu has been chosen, because it fits perfectly into the Open Source views of EMC2:

- Ubuntu will always be free of charge, and there is no extra fee for the "enterprise edition", we make our very best work available to everyone on the same Free terms.
- Ubuntu comes with full professional support on commercial terms from hundreds of companies around the world, if you need those services. Each new version of Ubuntu receives free security updates for 18 months after release, some versions are supported for even longer.
- Ubuntu uses the very best in translations and accessibility infrastructure that the Free Software community has to offer, to make Ubuntu usable for as many people as possible.
- Ubuntu is released regularly and predictably; a new release is made every six months. You can use the current stable release or help improve the current development release.
- The Ubuntu community is entirely committed to the principles of free software development; we encourage people to use open source software, improve it and pass it on.

2.2 EMC Download Page

You will find the most recent releases of EMC2 announced on www.linuxcnc.org. The releases of EMC2 will be done in two ways (sources and binary package). The sources (described in the Developers Handbook) consist of a tarball (emc2-<version>.tar.gz), which you should download and unpack into your home directory.

This document (oriented towards the end-user) will only try to explain how to install the binary package on the Ubuntu distribution².

¹"Ubuntu" is an ancient African word, meaning "humanity to others". Ubuntu also means "I am what I am because of who we all are". The Ubuntu Linux distribution brings the spirit of Ubuntu to the software world. You can read more about it at <http://www.ubuntu.com>

²For information regarding other Linux variants, check the Developers Handbook or ask for help on the emc-developers mailing list http://sourceforge.net/mail/?group_id=6744.

2.3 EMC2 Live CD

The EMC2 team now has a custom Live-CD based on Ubuntu 6.06 that will let you try out EMC2 before installing, and it's also the easiest way to install Ubuntu and EMC2 together.

Just download the ISO <http://linuxcnc.org/iso/emc2-ubuntu6.06-desktop-i386.iso> (EU Mirror <http://dsplabs.utt.ro/~juve/emc/>) and burn it to a CD. (The MD5SUM of the CD is to be determined)

When you boot the CD on your machine, you can see and experiment with the exact environment and EMC2 software that you will have if you choose to install it.

If you like what you see, just click the Install icon on the desktop, answer a few questions (your name, timezone, password) and the install completes in a few minutes.

This install gives you all the benefits of the community-supported Ubuntu distribution as well as being automatically configured for EMC2. As new Ubuntu updates or EMC2 releases are made, the Update manager will let you know and allow you to easily upgrade.

2.4 EMC2 install script

We also provide a simple script to install emc2 on Ubuntu for users with an existing installation of Ubuntu. It runs the commands explained in 2.5.

To use it you need to :

- Download the script from <http://linuxcnc.org/dapper/emc2-install.sh> (For Ubuntu 6.06)
- Save it on your Desktop. Right-click the icon, select Properties. Go to the Permissions tab and check the box for Owner: Execute. Close the Properties window.
- Now double-click the emc2-install.sh icon, and select "Run in Terminal". A terminal will appear and you will be asked for your password.
- When the installation asks if you are sure you want to install the EMC2 packages, hit Enter to accept. Now just allow the install to finish.
- When it is done, you must reboot (System > Log Out > Restart the Computer), and when you log in again you can run EMC2 by selecting it on the Applications > CNC Menu.
- If you aren't ready to set up a machine configuration, try the sim-AXIS configuration; it runs a "simulated machine" that requires no attached hardware.
- Now that the initial installation is done, Ubuntu will prompt you when updates of EMC2 or its supporting files are available. When they are, you can update them easily and automatically with the Update Manager.

2.5 Manual installing using apt commands.

The following few section will describe how to install EMC2 on Ubuntu 6.06 "Dapper Dreake" using a console and apt-commands. If you know a bit about Linux and Debian-flavored distributions this might be trivial. If not, you might consider reading 2.4.

First add the repository to /etc/apt/sources.list:

```
$ sudo sh -c 'echo "deb http://www.linuxcnc.org/emc2/ dapper emc2.2" >>/etc/apt/sources.list;'
$ sudo sh -c 'echo "deb-src http://www.linuxcnc.org/emc2/ dapper emc2.2" >>/etc/apt/sources.list'
```

Then update & get emc2.

```
$ sudo apt-get update
$ sudo apt-get install emc2
```

This command will install the emc2 package along with all dependencies³.

You might get warnings that the packages are from an untrusted source (this means your computer doesn't recognize the GPG signature on the packages). To correct that issue the following commands:

```
$ gpg --keyserver pgpkeys.mit.edu --recv-key BC92B87F
$ gpg -a --export BC92B87F | sudo apt-key add -
```

³The dependencies are one of the nicest thing in Debian based distributions. They assure you have everything installed that you need. In the case of emc2 it's even a RT-patched kernel, and all needed libraries.

Part II

Configuring EMC2

Chapter 3

Running EMC

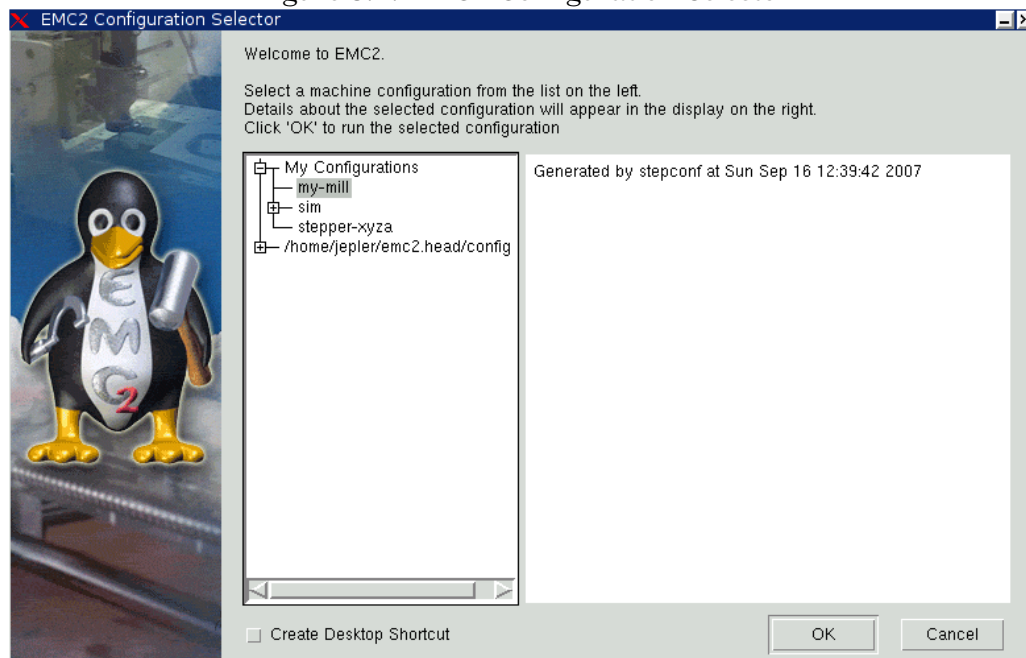
3.1 Invoking emc

After installation, emc2 starts just like any other piece of Linux software: run it from the terminal by issuing the command `emc`, or select it in the Applications > CNC menu.

3.2 Configuration Selector

By default, the Configuration Selector dialog is shown when you first run emc. Your own personalized configurations are shown at the top of the list, followed by sample configurations.¹ Figure 3.1 shows the appearance of the configuration selector screen.

Figure 3.1: EMC2 Configuration Selector



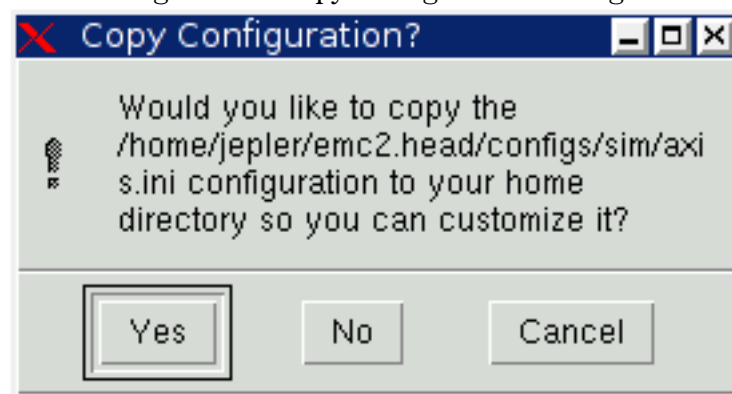
Click any of the listed configurations to display specific information about it. Double-click a configuration or click OK to start the configuration. Select “Create Desktop Shortcut” and then click

¹Since each sample configuration is for a different type of hardware interface, most will not run on your system. The configurations listed under the category “sim” run entirely without attached hardware.

OK to add an icon on the Ubuntu desktop to directly launch this configuration without showing the Configuration Selector screen.

If you select a configuration from the Sample Configurations section, you will be asked to copy the configuration to a location in your home directory. It is safe to say “yes” to this prompt. If you say “no”, emc may start but will behave strangely—for instance, offsets entered with Touch Off will be cleared unexpectedly.

Figure 3.2: Copy Configuration Dialog



3.3 Next steps in configuration

If your machine is controlled with step and direction signals on the PC parallel port, read the next chapter, “Stepconf”. Otherwise, find the sample configuration that uses the same interface hardware as your machine, and customizing it according to the details of your machine. Make a copy of that configuration in your home directory and continue reading the chapter “INI Configuration”.

Chapter 4

Stepconf: Configure EMC2 for Step & Direction CNC Machines

EMC2 is capable of controlling a wide range of machinery using many different hardware interfaces. Stepconf is a program which generates EMC configuration files for a specific class of CNC machine: those connected to the PC using a standard **parallel port** and controlled with **step & direction** signals.

4.1 Step by Step Instructions

4.1.1 Basic Information

Machine Name Choose a name for your machine. Use only uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, “-” and “_”.

Axis Configuration Choose XYZ (Mill), XYZA (4-axis mill) or XZ (Lathe).

Machine Units Choose Inch or mm. All subsequent questions (such as machine travel, leadscrew pitch, etc) will be answered in the chosen units

Driver Characteristics If you have one of the stepper drivers listed in the pulldown box, choose it. Otherwise, find the 4 timing values in your driver’s datasheet and enter them. If the datasheet gives a value in microseconds, multiply by 1000. For example, enter 4.5us as 4500.

Additional signal conditioning or isolation such as optocouplers and RC filters can impose timing constraints of their own, in addition to those of the driver.

Latency Test Result Enter the result of the Latency Test here. (see section [4.5](#))

Max Step Rate

Min Base Period Based on the Driver Characteristics and Latency Test Result, Stepconf automatically determines the minimum usable BASE_PERIOD, and the step rate that is possible at that BASE_PERIOD.

Onscreen Prompt For Tool Change If this box is checked, EMC will pause and prompt you to change the tool when **M6** is encountered. Leave this box checked unless you plan to add support for an automatic tool changer in a custom hal file

Figure 4.1: Basic Information Page

The screenshot shows a window titled "EMC2 Stepper Mill Configuration" with a sub-header "Basic machine information". The window contains several input fields and checkboxes for configuring a stepper mill. The fields are organized into sections: Machine Name, Configuration directory, Axis configuration, Machine units, Driver characteristics, and Parport Base Address. The "Driver characteristics" section includes fields for Driver type, Step Time, Step Space, Direction Hold, and Direction Setup, all with unit suffixes. The "Parport Base Address" section includes fields for Parport Base Address and Latency test result, with unit suffixes. A checkbox for "Onscreen prompt for tool change" is also present. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: "Cancel", "Back", and "Forward".

EMC2 Stepper Mill Configuration

Basic machine information

Machine Name:

Configuration directory:

Axis configuration:

Machine units:

Driver characteristics: (Multiply by 1000 for times specified in μ s or microseconds)

Driver type:

Step Time: ns

Step Space: ns

Direction Hold: ns

Direction Setup: ns

Parport Base Address: Min Base Period: 30000 ns

Latency test result: ns Max step rate: 33333 Hz

☒ Onscreen prompt for tool change

Figure 4.2: Parallel Port Setup Page

EMC2 Stepper Mill Configuration

Parallel Port Setup

Outputs (PC to Mill):		Invert	Inputs (Mill to PC):		Invert
Pin 1:	ESTOP Out	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pin 10:	Both Limit + Home X	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pin 2:	X Step	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pin 11:	Both Limit + Home Y	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pin 3:	X Direction	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pin 12:	Both Limit + Home Z	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pin 4:	Y Step	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pin 13:	Both Limit + Home A	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pin 5:	Y Direction	<input type="checkbox"/>	Pin 15:	Probe In	<input type="checkbox"/>
Pin 6:	Z Step	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 7:	Z Direction	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 8:	A Step	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 9:	A Direction	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 14:	Spindle CW	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 16:	Spindle PWM	<input type="checkbox"/>			
Pin 17:	Amplifier Enable	<input type="checkbox"/>			

☐ Include custom PyVCP Panel
☒ Include custom HAL configuration

Output pinout presets:

Sherline Outputs
 Xylotex Outputs

Figure 4.3: Axis Configuration Page

EMC2 Stepper Mill Configuration

X Axis Configuration

Motor steps per revolution: Test this axis

Driver Microstepping:

Pulley teeth (Motor:Leadscrew): :

Leadscrew Pitch: rev / in

Maximum Velocity: in / s

Maximum Acceleration: in / s²

Home location:

Table travel: to

Home Switch location:

Home Search velocity:

Home Latch direction:

Time to accelerate to max speed: 0.0333s

Distance to accelerate to max speed: 0.0167in

Pulse rate at max speed: 8000.0Hz

Axis SCALE 8000.0

Cancel Back Forward

4.1.2 Parallel Port Setup

For each pin, choose the signal which matches your parallel port pinout. Turn on the “invert” checkbox if the signal is inverted (0V for true/active, 5V for false/inactive).

Output pinout presets Automatically set pins 2 through 9 according to the Sherline standard (Direction on pins 2, 4, 6, 8) or the Xylotex standard (Direction on pins 3, 5, 7, 9).

Include custom HAL configuration Allows you to add additional hal customizations in the file `custom.hal` after running Stepconf.

Include custom PyVCP Panel If selected, the PyVCP control panel `panel.xml` will be displayed on the right-hand side of the main AXIS window.

4.1.3 Axis Configuration

Motor Steps Per Revolution The number of full steps per motor revolution. If you know how many degrees the motor is (e.g., 1.2 degree), then divide 360 by the degrees to find the number of steps per motor revolution.

Driver Microstepping The amount of microstepping performed by the driver. Enter “2” for half-stepping.

Pulley Ratio If your machine has pulleys between the motor and leadscrew, enter the ratio here. If not, enter “1:1”.

Leadscrew Pitch Enter the pitch of the leadscrew here. If you chose “Inch” units, enter the number of threads per inch here (e.g., enter 8 for 8TPI). If you chose “mm” units, enter the number of millimeters per thread here (e.g., enter 2 for 2mm/rev). If the machine travels in the wrong direction, enter a negative number here instead of a positive number.

Maximum Velocity

Maximum Acceleration The correct values for these items can only be determined through experimentation. See “Finding Velocity and Acceleration” below.

Home Location The position the machine moves to after completing the homing procedure for this axis. For machines without home switches, this is the location the operator manually moves the machine to before pressing the Home button.

Table Travel The range of travel that gcode programs must not exceed. The home location must be inside the Table Travel. In particular, having Home Location exactly equal to one of the Table Travel values is incorrect configuration

Home Switch Location The location at which the home switch trips or releases during the homing process. This item and the two below only appear when Home Switches were chosen in the Parallel Port Pinout.

Home Search Velocity The velocity to use when moving towards the switch. If the switch is near the end of travel, this velocity must be chosen so that the axis can decelerate to a stop before hitting the end of travel. If the switch is only closed for a short range of travel (instead of being closed from its trip point to one end of travel), this velocity must be chosen so that the axis can decelerate to a stop before the switch opens again, and homing must always be started from the same side of the switch.

If the machine moves the wrong direction at the beginning of the homing procedure, negate the value of **Home Search Velocity**.

Home Latch Direction Choose “Same” to have homing back off the switch, then approach it again at a very low speed. The second time the switch closes, the home position is set.

Choose “Opposite” to have homing slowly back off the switch. When the switch opens, the home position is set.

Time to accelerate to max speed

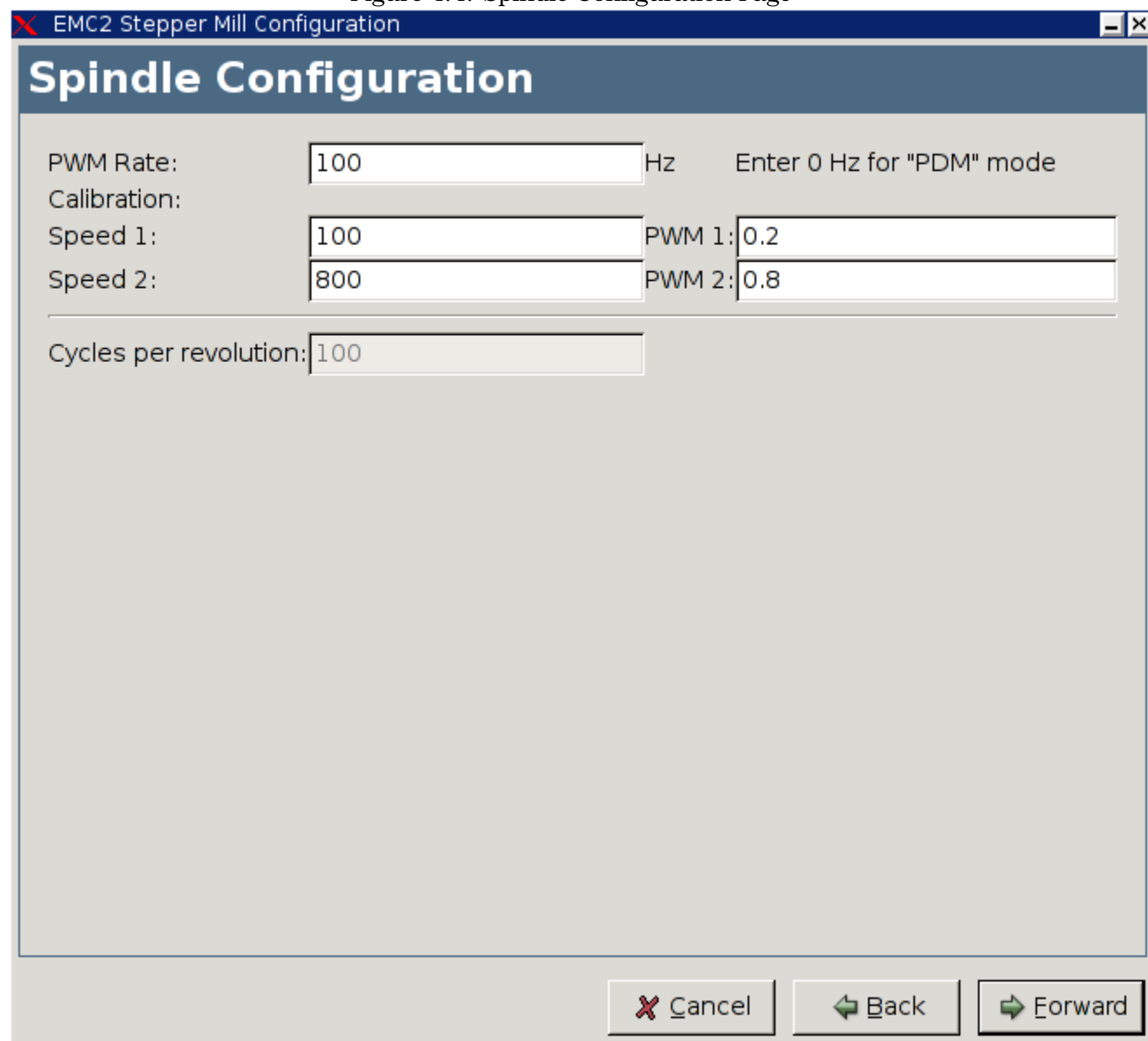
Distance to accelerate to max speed

Pulse rate at max speed Information computed based on the values entered above. The greatest **Pulse rate at max speed** determines the **BASE_PERIOD**, and values above 20000Hz may lead to slow response time or even lockups (the fastest usable pulse rate varies from computer to computer)

4.1.4 Spindle Configuration




These options only appear when “Spindle PWM”, “Spindle A” or “Spindle PPR” are chosen in the **Parallel port pinout**.

Figure 4.4: Spindle Configuration Page



The screenshot shows a software window titled "EMC2 Stepper Mill Configuration" with a sub-header "Spindle Configuration". The window contains several input fields for configuring the spindle. The "PWM Rate" is set to 100 Hz, with a note to "Enter 0 Hz for 'PDM' mode". The "Calibration:" label is present but has no associated input field. "Speed 1" is set to 100 and "Speed 2" is set to 800. "PWM 1" is set to 0.2 and "PWM 2" is set to 0.8. "Cycles per revolution" is set to 100. At the bottom, there are three buttons: "Cancel" (with a red X icon), "Back" (with a left arrow icon), and "Forward" (with a right arrow icon).

PWM Rate:	100	Hz	Enter 0 Hz for "PDM" mode	
Calibration:				
Speed 1:	100		PWM 1:	0.2
Speed 2:	800		PWM 2:	0.8
Cycles per revolution:	100			

Buttons:  Cancel  Back  Forward

4.1.4.1 Spindle Speed Control

If “Spindle PWM” appears on the pinout, the following information should be entered:

PWM Rate The “carrier frequency” of the PWM signal to the spindle. Enter “0” for PDM mode, which is useful for generating an analog control voltage. Refer to the documentation for your spindle controller for the appropriate value.

Speed 1 and 2, PWM 1 and 2 The generated configuration file uses a simple linear relationship to determine the PWM value for a given RPM value. If the values are not known, they can be determined. See the section “Determining Spindle Calibration” below.

4.1.4.2 Spindle-synchronized motion (lathe threading)

When the appropriate signals from a spindle encoder are connected to the parallel port, EMC supports lathe threading. These signals are:

Spindle PPR Also called “Index pulse”, this is a pulse that occurs once per revolution of the spindle.

Spindle A This is a pulse that occurs in multiple equally-spaced locations as the spindle turns.

Spindle B (optional) This is a second pulse that occurs, but with an offset from **Spindle A**. The advantages to using both **A** and **B** are increased noise immunity and increased resolution.

If “Spindle A” and “Spindle PPR” appear on the pinout, the following information should be entered:

Cycles per revolution The number of cycles of the **Spindle A** signal during one revolution of the spindle

4.1.5 Machine Configuration Complete

Click “Apply” to write the configuration files. Later, you can re-run this program and tweak the settings you entered before.

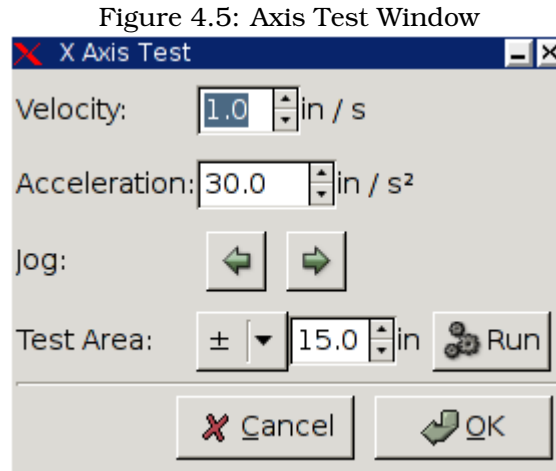
4.2 Finding Velocity and Acceleration

With Stepconf it is easy to try different values for acceleration and velocity. First, enter the correct figures for **Steps per Revolution**, **Microstepping**, **Pulley**, and **Leadscrew**. Then enter a provisional value for **Velocity**. Next, click **Test this axis**.

4.2.1 Finding Maximum Velocity

Begin with a low Acceleration (e.g., 2 in/s² or 50mm/s²) and the velocity you hope to attain. Using the buttons provided, jog the axis to near the center of travel. Take care because with a low acceleration value, it can take a surprising distance for the axis to decelerate to a stop.

After gauging the amount of travel available, enter a safe distance in Test Area, keeping in mind that after a stall the motor may next start to move in an unexpected direction. Then click Run. The machine will begin to move back and forth along this axis. In this test, it is important that the combination of Acceleration and Test Area allow the machine to reach the selected Velocity and “cruise” for at least a short distance—the more distance, the better this test is. The formula $d = .5 * v * v / a$ gives



the minimum distance required reach the specified velocity with the given acceleration. If it is convenient and safe to do so, push the table against the direction of motion to simulate cutting forces. If the machine stalls, reduce the speed and start the test again.

If the machine did not obviously stall, click the “Run” button off. The axis now returns to the position where it started. If the position is incorrect, then the axis stalled or lost steps during the test. Reduce Velocity and start the test again.

If the machine doesn’t move, stalls, or loses steps no matter how low you turn Velocity, verify the following:

- Correct step waveform timings
- Correct pinout, including “Invert” on step pins
- Correct, well-shielded cabling
- Physical problems with the motor, motor coupling, leadscrew, etc.

Once you have found a speed at which the axis does not stall or lose steps during this testing procedure, reduce it by 10% and use that as the axis Maximum Velocity.

4.2.2 Finding Maximum Acceleration

With the Maximum Velocity you found in the previous step, enter the acceleration value to test. procedure as above, adjusting the Acceleration value up or down as necessary. In this test, it is important that the combination of Acceleration and Test Area allow the machine to reach the selected Velocity. Once you have found a value at which the axis does not stall or lose steps during this testing procedure, reduce it by 10% and use that as the axis Maximum Acceleration.

4.3 Determining Spindle Calibration

Enter the following values in the Spindle Configuration page:

Speed 1:	0	PWM 1:	0
Speed 2:	1000	PWM 1:	1

Finish the remaining steps of the configuration process, then launch EMC with your configuration. Turn the machine on and select the MDI tab. Start the spindle turning by entering: M3 S100.

Change the spindle speed by entering a different S-number: S800. Valid numbers range from 1 to 1000.

For two different S-numbers, measure the actual spindle speed in RPM. Record the S-numbers and actual spindle speeds. Run Stepconf again. For “Speed” enter the measured speed, and for “PWM” enter the S-number divided by 1000.

Because most spindle drivers are somewhat nonlinear in their response curves, it is best to:

- Make sure the two calibration speeds are not too close together in RPM
- Make sure the two calibration speeds are in the range of speeds you will typically use while milling

For instance, if your spindle will go from 0RPM to 8000RPM, but you generally use speeds from 400RPM to 4000RPM, then find the PWM values that give 1600RPM and 2800RPM.

4.4 Axis Travel, Home Location, and Home Switch Location

For each axis, there is a limited range of travel. The physical end of travel is called the **hard stop**.

Before the **hard stop** there is a **limit switch**. If the limit switch is encountered during normal operation, EMC shuts down the motor amplifier. The distance between the **hard stop** and **limit switch** must be long enough to allow an unpowered motor to coast to a stop.

Before the **limit switch** there is a **soft limit**. This is a limit enforced in software after homing. If a MDI command, or gcode program would pass the soft limit, it is not executed. If a jog would pass the soft limit, it is terminated at the soft limit.

The **home switch** can be placed anywhere within the travel (between hard stops). As long as external hardware does not deactivate the motor amplifiers with the limit switch is reached, one of the limit switches can be used as a home switch.

The **zero position** is the location on the axis that is 0 in the machine coordinate system. Usually the **zero position** will be within the **soft limits**. On lathes, constant surface speed mode requires that machine **X=0** correspond to the center of spindle rotation when no tool offset is in effect.

The **home position** is the location within travel that the axis will be moved to at the end of the homing sequence. This value must be within the **soft limits**. In particular, the **home position** should never be exactly equal to a **soft limit**.

4.4.1 Operating without Limit Switches

A machine can be operated without limit switches. In this case, only the **soft limits** stop the machine from reaching the **hard stop**. **Soft limits** only operate after the machine has been homed. Since there is no switch, the machine must be moved by eye to the home position before pressing the “Home” or “Home All” button.

4.4.2 Operating without Home Switches

A machine can be operated without home switches. If the machine has limit switches, but no home switches, it is best to use a limit switch as the home switch (e.g., choose **Minimum Limit + Home X** in the pinout). If the machine has no home switches, or the limit switches cannot be used as home switches for another reason, then the machine must be homed “by eye”. Homing by eye is not as repeatable as homing to switches, but it still allows the **soft limits** to be useful.

4.5 Latency Test

Generating step pulses in software has one very big advantage - it's free. Just about every PC has a parallel port that is capable of outputting step pulses that are generated by the software. However, software step pulses also have some disadvantages:

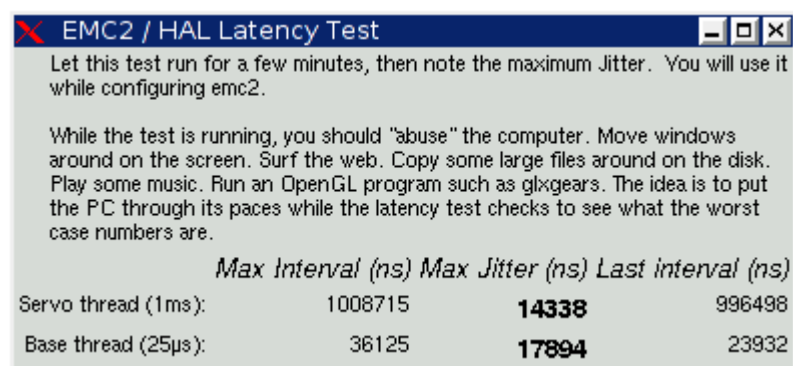
- limited maximum step rate
- jitter in the generated pulses
- loads the CPU

Latency is how long it takes the PC to stop what it is doing and respond to an external request. In our case, the request is the periodic "heartbeat" that serves as a timing reference for the step pulses. The lower the latency, the faster you can run the heartbeat, and the faster and smoother the step pulses will be.

Latency is far more important than CPU speed. A lowly Pentium II that responds to interrupts within 10 microseconds each and every time can give better results than the latest and fastest P4 Hyperthreading beast.

The CPU isn't the only factor in determining latency. Motherboards, video cards, USB ports, and a number of other things can hurt the latency. The best way to find out what you are dealing with is to run the HAL latency test.

To run the test, simply open a shell and type `latency-test`. You should see something like this:



	<i>Max Interval (ns)</i>	<i>Max Jitter (ns)</i>	<i>Last interval (ns)</i>
Servo thread (1ms):	1008715	14338	996498
Base thread (25µs):	36125	17894	23932

While the test is running, you should "abuse" the computer. Move windows around on the screen. Surf the web. Copy some large files around on the disk. Play some music. Run an OpenGL program such as `glxgears`. The idea is to put the PC through its paces while the latency test checks to see what the worst case numbers are. **Do not run EMC2 or Stepconf while the latency test is running.**

The important numbers are the "max jitter". In the example above, that is 17894 nanoseconds, or 17.9 microseconds. Record this number, and enter it in Stepconf when it is requested.

In the example above, `latency-test` only ran for a few seconds. You should run the test for at least several minutes; sometimes the worst case latency doesn't happen very often, or only happens when you do some particular action. For instance, one Intel motherboard worked pretty well most of the time, but every 64 seconds it had a very bad 300µS latency. Fortunately that was fixable (see "Fixing Dapper SMI Issues" <http://wiki.linuxcnc.org/cgi-bin/emcinfo.pl?FixingDapperSMIIssues>)

So, what do the results mean? If your Max Jitter number is less than about 15-20 microseconds (15000-20000 nanoseconds), the computer should give very nice results with software stepping. If the max latency is more like 30-50 microseconds, you can still get good results, but your maximum

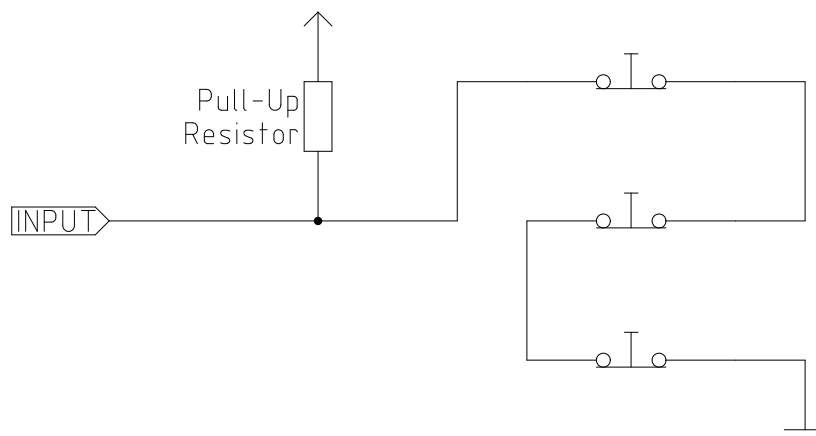


Figure 4.6: Wiring Normally Closed switches in series (simplified diagram)

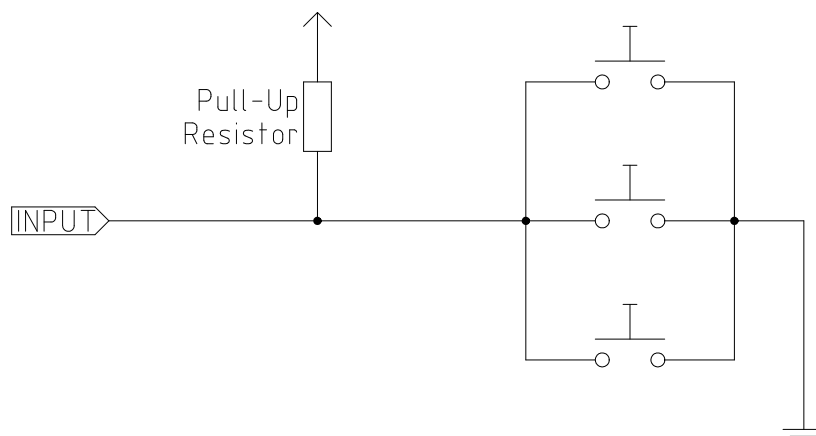


Figure 4.7: Wiring Normally Open switches in parallel (simplified diagram)

step rate might be a little disappointing, especially if you use microstepping or have very fine pitch leadscrews. If the numbers are 100uS or more (100,000 nanoseconds), then the PC is not a good candidate for software stepping. Numbers over 1 millisecond (1,000,000 nanoseconds) mean the PC is not a good candidate for EMC, regardless of whether you use software stepping or not.

Note that if you get high numbers, there may be ways to improve them. Another PC had very bad latency (several milliseconds) when using the onboard video. But a \$5 used Matrox video card solved the problem - EMC does not require bleeding edge hardware.

4.6 Home and Limit Switch wiring options

The ideal wiring for external switches would be one input per switch. However, the PC parallel port only offers a total of 5 inputs, while there are as many as 9 switches on a 3-axis machine. Instead, multiple switches are wired together in various ways so that a smaller number of inputs are required.

The figures below show the general idea of wiring multiple switches to a single input pin. In each case, when one switch is actuated, the value seen on INPUT goes from logic HIGH to LOW. However, EMC expects a TRUE value when a switch is closed, so the corresponding “Invert” box must be checked on the pinout configuration page.

The following combinations of switches are permitted in Stepconf:

- Combine home switches for all axes
- Combine limit switches for all axes
- Combine both limit switches for one axis
- Combine both limit switches and the home switch for one axis
- Combine one limit switch and the home switch for one axis

The last two combinations are also appropriate when a “home to limit” is used.

Chapter 5

INI Configuration

5.1 Files Used for Configuration

The EMC is configured with human readable text files. All of these files can be read and edited in any of the common text file editors available with most any Linux distribution.¹ You'll need to be a bit careful when you edit these files. Some mistakes will cause the startup to fail. These files are read whenever the software starts up. Some of them are read repeatedly while the CNC is running.

Configuration files include

INI The ini file overrides defaults that are compiled into the EMC code. It also provides sections that are read directly by the Hardware Abstraction Layer.

HAL The hal files start up process modules and provide linkages between EMC signals and specific hardware pins.

VAR The var file provide a set of numbered variables ("parameters") for use by the interpreter. These values are saved from one run to another. See section [12.5](#).

TBL The tbl file saves tool information. See section [12.4](#).

NML The nml file configures the communication channels used by the EMC. It is normally setup to run all of the communication within a single computer but can be modified to communicate between several computers.

.emcrc This file saves user specific information and is created to save the name of the directory when the user first selects an EMC configuration.²

Items marked (**HAL**) are used only by the sample HAL files and are suggested as a good convention. Other items are used by EMC directly, and must always have the section and item names given.

5.2 The INI File Layout

A typical INI file follows a rather simple layout that includes;

- comments.

¹Don't confuse a text editor with a word processor. A text editor like gedit or kwrite produce files that are plain text. They also produce lines of text that are separated from each other. A word processor like Open Office produce files with paragraphs and word wrapping and lots of embedded codes that control font size and such. A text editor does none of this.

²Usually this file is in the users home directory (e.g. /home/user/)

- sections,
- variables.

Each of these elements is separated on single lines. Each end of line or newline character creates a new element.

5.2.1 Comments

A comment line is started with a `;` or a `#` mark. When the ini reader sees either of these marks at the start a line, the rest of the line is ignored by the software. Comments can be used to describe what some INI element will do.

```
; This is my little mill configuration file.
; I set it up on January 12, 2006
```

Comments can also be used to select between several values of a single variable.

```
# DISPLAY = tkemc
DISPLAY = axis
# DISPLAY = mini
# DISPLAY = keystick
```

In this list, the `DISPLAY` variable will be set to `axis` because all of the others are commented out. If someone carelessly edits a list like this and leaves two of the lines uncommented, the first one encountered will be used.

Note that inside a variable, the `"#"` and `","` characters do not denote comments:

```
INCORRECT = value      # and a comment
```

5.2.2 Sections

Related parts of an ini file are separated into sections. A section line looks like `[THIS_SECTION]`. The name of the section is enclosed in brackets. The order of sections is unimportant. The following sections are used by emc:

- `[EMC]` general information (5.3.1)
- `[DISPLAY]` settings related to the graphical user interface (5.3.2)
- `[RS274NGC]` settings used by the g-code interpreter
- `[EMCMOT]` settings used by the realtime motion controller (5.3.3)
- `[HAL]` specifies .hal files (5.3.5)
- `[TASK]` settings used by the task controller (5.3.4)
- `[TRAJ]` additional settings used by the realtime motion controller (5.3.6)
- `[AXIS_0]` ... `[AXIS_n]` individual axis variables (5.3.7)
- `[EMCIO]` settings used by the I/O Controller (5.3.8)

5.2.3 Variables

A variable line is made up of a variable name, an equals sign(=), and a value. Everything from the first non-whitespace character after the = up to the end of the line is passed as the value, so you can embed spaces in string symbols if you want to or need to. A variable name is often called a keyword.

The following sections detail each section of the configuration file, using sample values for the configuration lines.

Some of the variables are used by EMC, and must always use the section names and variable names shown. Other variables are used only by HAL, and the section names and variable names shown are those used in the sample configuration files.

5.2.4 Definitions

Machine Units The units (of length or angle) specified in the inifile for a particular axis

5.3 INI Variable Definitions

5.3.1 [EMC] Section

VERSION = \$Revision: 1.3 \$ The version number for the INI file. The value shown here looks odd because it is automatically updated when using the Revision Control System. It's a good idea to change this number each time you revise your file. If you want to edit this manually just change the number and leave the other tags alone.

MACHINE = My Controller This is the name of the controller, which is printed out at the top of most graphical interfaces. You can put whatever you want here as long as you make it a single line long.

RS274NGC_STARTUP_CODE = G21 G90 A string of NC codes that the interpreter is initialized with. This is not a substitute for specifying modal g-codes at the top of each ngc file, because the modal codes of machines differ, and may be changed by g-code interpreted earlier in the session.

5.3.2 [DISPLAY] Section

Different user interface programs use different options, and not every option is supported by every user interface.

DISPLAY = tkemc The name of the user interface to use. Valid options may include:

- axis
- keystick
- mini
- tkemc
- xemc

POSITION_OFFSET = RELATIVE The coordinate system (RELATIVE or MACHINE) to show when the user interface starts. The RELATIVE coordinate system reflects the G92 and G5x coordinate offsets currently in effect.

POSITION_FEEDBACK = ACTUAL The coordinate value (COMMANDED or ACTUAL) to show when the user interface starts. The COMMANDED position is the ideal position requested by emc. The ACTUAL position is the feedback position of the motors.

MAX_FEED_OVERRIDE = 1.2 The maximum feed override the user may select. 1.2 means 120% of the programmed feed rate

MIN_SPINDLE_OVERRIDE = 0.5 The minimum spindle override the user may select. 0.5 means 50% of the programmed spindle speed. (This is useful as it's dangerous to run a program with a too low spindle speed).

MAX_SPINDLE_OVERRIDE = 1.0 The maximum spindle override the user may select. 1.0 means 100% of the programmed spindle speed

DEFAULT_LINEAR_VELOCITY = .25 The default velocity for linear jogs, in machine units per second. Only in the AXIS user interface.

MAX_LINEAR_VELOCITY = 1.0 The maximum velocity for linear jogs, in machine units per second. Only in the AXIS user interface.

DEFAULT_ANGULAR_VELOCITY = .25 The default velocity for angular jogs, in machine units per second. Only in the AXIS user interface.

MAX_ANGULAR_VELOCITY = 1.0 The maximum velocity for angular jogs, in machine units per second. Only in the AXIS user interface.

PROGRAM_PREFIX = ~/emc2/nc_files The default location for g-code files and the location for user-defined M-codes

INCREMENTS = 1 mm, .5 mm, ... Defines the increments available for incremental jogs. See section 9.3.4.1 for more information. Only in the AXIS user interface

INTRO_GRAPHIC = emc2.gif The image shown on the splash screen

INTRO_TIME = 5 The maximum time to show the splash screen

OPEN_FILE = /full/path/to/file.ngc The file to show in the preview plot when AXIS starts

5.3.3 [EMCMOT] Section

BASE_PERIOD = 50000 (HAL) “Base” task period, in nanoseconds - this is the fastest thread in the machine.

On servo-based systems, there is generally no reason for **BASE_PERIOD** to be smaller than **SERVO_PERIOD**.

On machines with software step generation, the **BASE_PERIOD** determines the maximum number of steps per second. In the absence of long step length and step space requirements, the absolute maximum step rate is one step per **BASE_PERIOD**. Thus, the **BASE_PERIOD** shown above gives an absolute maximum step rate of 20000 steps per second. 50000ns is a fairly conservative value. The smallest usable value is related to the Latency Test result (4.5), the necessary step length, and the processor speed.

Choosing a **BASE_PERIOD** that is too low can lead to the “Unexpected realtime delay” message, lockups, or spontaneous reboots.

SERVO_PERIOD = 1000000 (HAL) “Servo” task period is also in nanoseconds. This value will be rounded to an integer multiple of **BASE_PERIOD**. This value is used even on systems based on stepper motors.

This is the rate at which new motor positions are computed, following error is checked, PID output values are updated, and so on.

Most systems will not need to change this value. It is the update rate of the low level motion planner.

TRAJ_PERIOD = 1000000 (HAL) Trajectory Planner task period in nanoseconds This value will be rounded to an integer multiple of **SERVO_PERIOD**.

Except for machines with unusual kinematics (e.g., hexapods) there is no reason to make this value larger than **SERVO_PERIOD**.

5.3.4 [TASK] Section

CYCLE_TIME = 0.001 The period, in seconds, at which EMCTASK will run. This parameter affects the polling interval when waiting for motion to complete, when executing a pause instruction, and when accepting a command from a user interface. There is usually no need to change this number.

5.3.5 [HAL] section

HALFILE = example.hal Execute the file 'example.hal' at startup. If **HALFILE** is specified multiple times, the files are executed in the order they appear in the inifile. Almost all configurations will have at least one **HALFILE**, and stepper systems typically have two such files, one which specifies the generic stepper configuration (`core_stepper.hal`) and one which specifies the machine pinout (`xxx_pinout.hal`)

HAL = command Execute 'command' as a single hal command. If **HAL** is specified multiple times, the commands are executed in the order they appear in the inifile. **HAL** lines are executed after all **HALFILE** lines.

SHUTDOWN = shutdown.hal Execute the file 'shutdown.hal' when emc is exiting. Depending on the hardware drivers used, this may make it possible to set outputs to defined values when emc is exited normally. However, because there is no guarantee this file will be executed (for instance, in the case of a computer crash) it is not a replacement for a proper physical estop chain or other protections against software failure.

POSTGUI_HALFILE = example2.hal *(Only with the AXIS GUI)* Execute 'example2.hal' after the GUI has created its HAL pins. See section 9.11.3 for more information.

5.3.6 [TRAJ] Section

The [TRAJ] section contains general parameters for the trajectory planning module in EMCOT.

COORDINATES = X Y Z The names of the axes being controlled. X, Y, Z, A, B, C, U, V, and W are all valid. Only axis named in **COORDINATES** are accepted in g-code. This has no effect on the mapping from G-code axis names (X- Y- Z-) to joint numbers—for “trivial kinematics”, X is always joint 0, A is always joint 4, and U is always joint 7, and so on. It is permitted to write an axis name twice (e.g., X Y Y Z for a gantry machine) but this has no effect.

AXES = 3 One more than the number of the highest joint number in the system. For an XYZ machine, the joints are numbered 0, 1 and 2; in this case AXES should be 3. For an XYUV machine using “trivial kinematics”, the V joint is numbered 7 and therefore AXES should be 8. For a machine with nontrivial kinematics (e.g., scarakins) this will generally be the number of controlled joints.

HOME = 0 0 0 Coordinates of the homed position of each axis. Again for a fourth axis you will need 0 0 0 0. This value is only used for machines with nontrivial kinematics. On machines with trivial kinematics this value is ignored.

LINEAR_UNITS = <units> Specifies the machine units for linear axes. Possible choices are (in, inch, imperial, metric, mm). This does not affect the linear units in NC code (the G20 and G21 words do this).

ANGULAR_UNITS = <units> Specifies the machine units for rotational axes. Possible choices are 'deg', 'degree' (360 per circle), 'rad', 'radian' (2pi per circle), 'grad', or 'gon' (400 per circle). This does not affect the angular units of NC code. In RS274NGC, A-, B- and C- words are always expressed in degrees.

DEFAULT_VELOCITY = 0.0167 The initial rate for jogs of linear axes, in machine units per second. The value shown equals one unit per minute.

DEFAULT_ACCELERATION = 2.0 In machines with nontrivial kinematics, the acceleration used for “teleop” (cartesian space) jogs, in machine units per second per second.

MAX_VELOCITY = 5.0 The maximum velocity for any axis or coordinated move, in machine units per second. The value shown equals 300 units per minute.

MAX_ACCELERATION = 20.0 The maximum acceleration for any axis or coordinated axis move, in machine units per second per second.

POSITION_FILE = position.txt If set to a non-empty value, the joint positions are stored between runs in this file. This allows the machine to start with the same coordinates it had on shutdown.³ If unset, joint positions are not stored and will begin at 0 each time emc is started.

5.3.7 [AXIS_<num>] Section

The [AXIS_0], [AXIS_1], etc. sections contains general parameters for the individual components in the axis control module. The axis section names begin numbering at 0, and run through the number of axes specified in the [TRAJ] AXES entry minus 1.

TYPE = LINEAR The type of axes, either LINEAR or ANGULAR.

UNITS = inch If specified, this setting overrides the related [TRAJ] UNITS setting. (e.g., [TRAJ]LINEAR_UNITS if the TYPE of this axis is LINEAR, [TRAJ]ANGULAR_UNITS if the TYPE of this axis is ANGULAR)

MAX_VELOCITY = 1.2 Maximum velocity for this axis in machine units per second.

MAX_ACCELERATION = 20.0 Maximum acceleration for this axis in machine units per second squared.

BACKLASH = 0.000 Backlash in machine units. Backlash compensation value can be used to make up for small deficiencies in the hardware used to drive an axis.

COMP_FILE = file.extension A file holding a compensation structure for the specific axis. The values inside are triplets of nominal, forward and reverse positions which correspond to the nominal position (where it should be), forward (where the axis is while travelling forward) and reverse (where the axis is while travelling back). One set of triplets per line. Currently the limit inside EMC2 is for 256 triplets / axis. If COMP_FILE is specified, BACKLASH is ignored. COMP_FILE values are in machine units.

COMP_FILE_TYPE = 1 Specifying a non-zero value changes the expected format of the COMP_FILE. For COMP_FILE_TYPE of zero, the values are triplets for nominal, forward & reverse. Otherwise, the values in the COMP_FILE are nominal, forward_trim and reverse_trim. These correspond to the nominal, nominal-forward and nominal-reverse defined above.

MIN_LIMIT = -1000 The minimum limit (soft limit) for axis motion, in machine units. When this limit is exceeded, the controller aborts axis motion.

MAX_LIMIT = 1000 The maximum limit (soft limit) for axis motion, in machine units. When this limit is exceeded, the controller aborts axis motion.

³This assumes there was no movement of the machine while powered off. It helps on smaller machines without home switches.

MIN_FERROR = 0.010 This is the value in machine units by which the axis is permitted to deviate from commanded position at very low speeds. If MIN_FERROR is smaller than FERROR, the two produce a ramp of error trip points. You could think of this as a graph where one dimension is speed and the other is permitted following error. As speed increases the amount of following error also increases toward the FERROR value.

FERROR = 1.0 FERROR is the maximum allowable following error, in machine units. If the difference between commanded and sensed position exceeds this amount, the controller disables servo calculations, sets all the outputs to 0.0, and disables the amplifiers. If MIN_FERROR is present in the .ini file, velocity-proportional following errors are used. Here, the maximum allowable following error is proportional to the speed, with FERROR applying to the rapid rate set by [TRAJ]MAX_VELOCITY, and proportionally smaller following errors for slower speeds. The maximum allowable following error will always be greater than MIN_FERROR. This prevents small following errors for stationary axes from inadvertently aborting motion. Small following errors will always be present due to vibration, etc. The following polarity values determine how inputs are interpreted and how outputs are applied. They can usually be set via trial-and-error since there are only two possibilities. The EMCMOT utility program USRMOT can be used to set these interactively and verify their results so that the proper values can be put in the INI file with a minimum of trouble.

5.3.7.1 Homing-related items

The next few parameters are Homing related, for a better explanation read Section 5.4

HOME_OFFSET = 0.0 The axis position of the home switch or index pulse, in machine units.

HOME_SEARCH_VEL = 0.0 Initial homing velocity in machine units per escond. A value of zero means assume that the current location is the home position for the machine. If your machine has no home switches you will want to leave this value alone.

HOME_LATCH_VEL = 0.0 Final homing velocity in machine units per second.

HOME_USE_INDEX = NO If the encoder used for this axis has an index pulse, and the motion card has provision for this signal you may set it to yes. When it is yes, it will affect the kind of home pattern used.

HOME_IGNORE_LIMITS = NO Some machines use a limit switch as a home switch. This variable should be set to yes if you machine does this.

5.3.7.2 Servo-related items

The following items are for servo-based systems and servo-like systems including the univstep board from Pico Systems.⁴ This description assumes that the units of output from the PID component are volts.

P = 50 (HAL) The proportional gain for the axis servo. This value multiplies the error between commanded and actual position in machine units, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the P gain are volts per machine unit, e.g., $\frac{\text{volt}}{\text{mm}}$ if machine units are millimeters.

I = 0 (HAL) The integral gain for the axis servo. The value multiplies the cumulative error between commanded and actual position in machine units, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the I gain are volts per machine unit per second, e.g., $\frac{\text{volt}}{\text{mm s}}$ if machine units are millimeters.

⁴Refer to the the EMC2_Integrator_Manual for further information about servo systems and PID control.

D = 0 (HAL) The derivative gain for the axis servo. The value multiplies the difference between the current and previous errors, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the D gain are volts per machine unit per second, e.g., $\frac{volt}{mm/s}$ if machine units are millimeters.

FF0 = 0 (HAL) The 0-th order feedforward gain. This number is multiplied by the commanded position, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the FF0 gain are volts per machine unit, e.g., $\frac{volt}{mm}$ if machine units are millimeters.

FF1 = 0 (HAL) The 1st order feedforward gain. This number is multiplied by the change in commanded position per second, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the FF1 gain are volts per machine unit per second, e.g., $\frac{volt}{mm \cdot s}$ if machine units are millimeters.

FF2 = 0 (HAL) The 2nd order feedforward gain. This number is multiplied by the change in commanded position per second per second, resulting in a contribution to the computed voltage for the motor amplifier. The units on the FF2 gain are volts per machine unit per second per second, e.g., $\frac{volt}{mm \cdot s^2}$ if machine units are millimeters.

OUTPUT_SCALE = 1.000

OUTPUT_OFFSET = 0.000 (HAL) These two values are the scale and offset factors for the axis output to the motor amplifiers. The second value (offset) is subtracted from the computed output (in volts), and divided by the first value (scale factor), before being written to the D/A converters. The units on the scale value are in true volts per DAC output volts. The units on the offset value are in volts. These can be used to linearize a DAC.

Specifically, when writing outputs, the EMC first converts the desired output in quasi-SI units to raw actuator values, e.g., volts for an amplifier DAC. This scaling looks like:

$$raw = \frac{output - offset}{scale}$$

The value for scale can be obtained analytically by doing a unit analysis, i.e., units are [output SI units]/[actuator units]. For example, on a machine with a velocity mode amplifier such that 1 volt results in 250 mm/sec velocity,

$$amplifier[volts] = (output[\frac{mm}{sec}] - offset[\frac{mm}{sec}]) / 250 \frac{mm}{sec \cdot volt}$$

Note that the units of the offset are in machine units, e.g., mm/sec, and they are pre-subtracted from the sensor readings. The value for this offset is obtained by finding the value of your output which yields 0.0 for the actuator output. If the DAC is linearized, this offset is normally 0.0.

The scale and offset can be used to linearize the DACs as well, resulting in values that reflect the combined effects of amplifier gain, DAC non-linearity, DAC units, etc. To do this, follow this procedure:

1. Build a calibration table for the output, driving the DACs with a desired voltage and measuring the result. See table 5.3.7.2 for an example of voltage measurements.
2. Do a least-squares linear fit to get coefficients a, b such that

$$meas = a * raw + b$$

3. Note that we want raw output such that our measured result is identical to the commanded output. This means

(a)

$$cmd = a * raw + b$$

(b)

$$raw = (cmd - b) / a$$

4. As a result, the a and b coefficients from the linear fit can be used as the scale and offset for the controller directly.

MAX_OUTPUT = 10 (HAL) The maximum value for the output of the PID compensation that is written to the motor amplifier, in volts. The computed output value is clamped to this limit. The limit is applied before scaling to raw output units.

MIN_OUTPUT = -10 (HAL) The minimum value for the output of the PID compensation that is written to the motor amplifier, in volts. The computed output value is clamped to this limit. The limit is applied before scaling to raw output units.

Output Voltage Measurements

Raw	Measured
-10	-9.93
-9	-8.83
0	-0.03
1	0.96
9	9.87
10	10.87

INPUT_SCALE = 20000 (HAL) Specifies the number of pulses that corresponds to a move of one machine unit. A second number, if specified, is ignored.

For example, on a 2000 counts per rev encoder, and 10 revs/inch gearing, and desired units of mm, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 input_scale &= 2000 \frac{counts}{rev} * 10 \frac{rev}{inch} \\
 &= 20000 \frac{counts}{inch}
 \end{aligned}$$

5.3.7.3 Stepper-related items

SCALE = 4000 (HAL) Specifies the number of pulses that corresponds to a move of one machine unit. For stepper systems, this is the number of step pulses issued per machine unit. For servo systems, this is the number of feedback pulses per machine unit. A second number, if specified, is ignored.

For example, on a 1.8 degree stepper motor with half-stepping, and 10 revs/inch gearing, and desired units of mm, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 input_scale &= \frac{2 steps}{1.8 degree} * 360 \frac{degree}{rev} * 10 \frac{rev}{inch} \\
 &= 4000 \frac{steps}{inch}
 \end{aligned}$$

Older stepper configuration .ini and .hal used INPUT_SCALE for this value.

STEPGEN_MAXACCEL = 21.0 (HAL) Acceleration limit for the step generator. This should be 1% to 10% larger than the axis MAX_ACCELERATION. This value improves the tuning of stepgen's "position loop".

STEPGEN_MAXVEL = 1.4 (HAL) Older configuration files have a velocity limit for the step generator as well. If specified, it should also be 1% to 10% larger than the axis MAX_VELOCITY. Subsequent testing has shown that use of STEPGEN_MAXVEL does not improve the tuning of stepgen's position loop.

5.3.8 [EMCIO] Section

CYCLE_TIME = 0.100 The period, in seconds, at which EMCIO will run. Making it 0.0 or a negative number will tell EMCIO not to sleep at all. There is usually no need to change this number.

TOOL_TABLE = tool.tbl The file which contains tool information, described in [12.4](#)

TOOL_CHANGE_POSITION = 0 0 2 Specifies the XYZ location to move to when performing a tool change.

SEARCH_VEL	LATCH_VEL	USE_INDEX	Homing Type
nonzero	nonzero	NO	Switch-only
nonzero	nonzero	YES	Switch + Index
0	nonzero	YES	Index-only
0	0	NO	None
Other combinations			Error

Table 5.1: Homing Types

5.4 Homing

5.4.1 Overview

Homing seems simple enough - just move each joint to a known location, and set EMC's internal variables accordingly. However, different machines have different requirements, and homing is actually quite complicated.

5.4.2 Homing Sequence

Figure 5.1 shows four possible homing sequences, along with the associated configuration parameters. For a more detailed description of what each configuration parameter does, see the following section.

5.4.3 Configuration

There are six pieces of information that determine exactly how the home sequence behaves. They are defined in an [AXIS] section of the inifile.

5.4.3.1 HOME_SEARCH_VEL

The default value is zero. A value of zero causes EMC to assume that there is no home switch; the search stage of homing is skipped.

If 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL' is non-zero, then EMC assumes that there is a home switch. It begins by checking whether the home switch is already tripped. If so, it backs off the switch at HOME_SEARCH_VEL (the direction of the back-off is opposite the sign of HOME_SEARCH_VEL). Then it searches for the home switch by moving in the direction specified by the sign of 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL', at a speed determined by its absolute value. When the home switch is detected, the joint will stop as fast as possible, but there will always be some overshoot. The amount of overshoot depends on the speed. If it is too high, the joint might overshoot enough to hit a limit switch or crash into the end of travel. On the other hand, if 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL' is too low, homing can take a long time.

5.4.3.2 HOME_LATCH_VEL

Specifies the speed and direction that EMC uses when it makes its final accurate determination of the home switch (if present) and index pulse location (if present). It will usually be slower than the search velocity to maximise accuracy. If HOME_SEARCH_VEL and HOME_LATCH_VEL have the same sign, then the latch phase is done while moving in the same direction as the search phase. (In that case, EMC first backs off the switch, before moving towards it again at the latch velocity.) If HOME_SEARCH_VEL and HOME_LATCH_VEL have opposite signs, the latch phase is done while moving in the opposite direction from the search phase. That means EMC will latch the first pulse after it moves off the switch. If 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL' is zero (meaning there is no home switch),

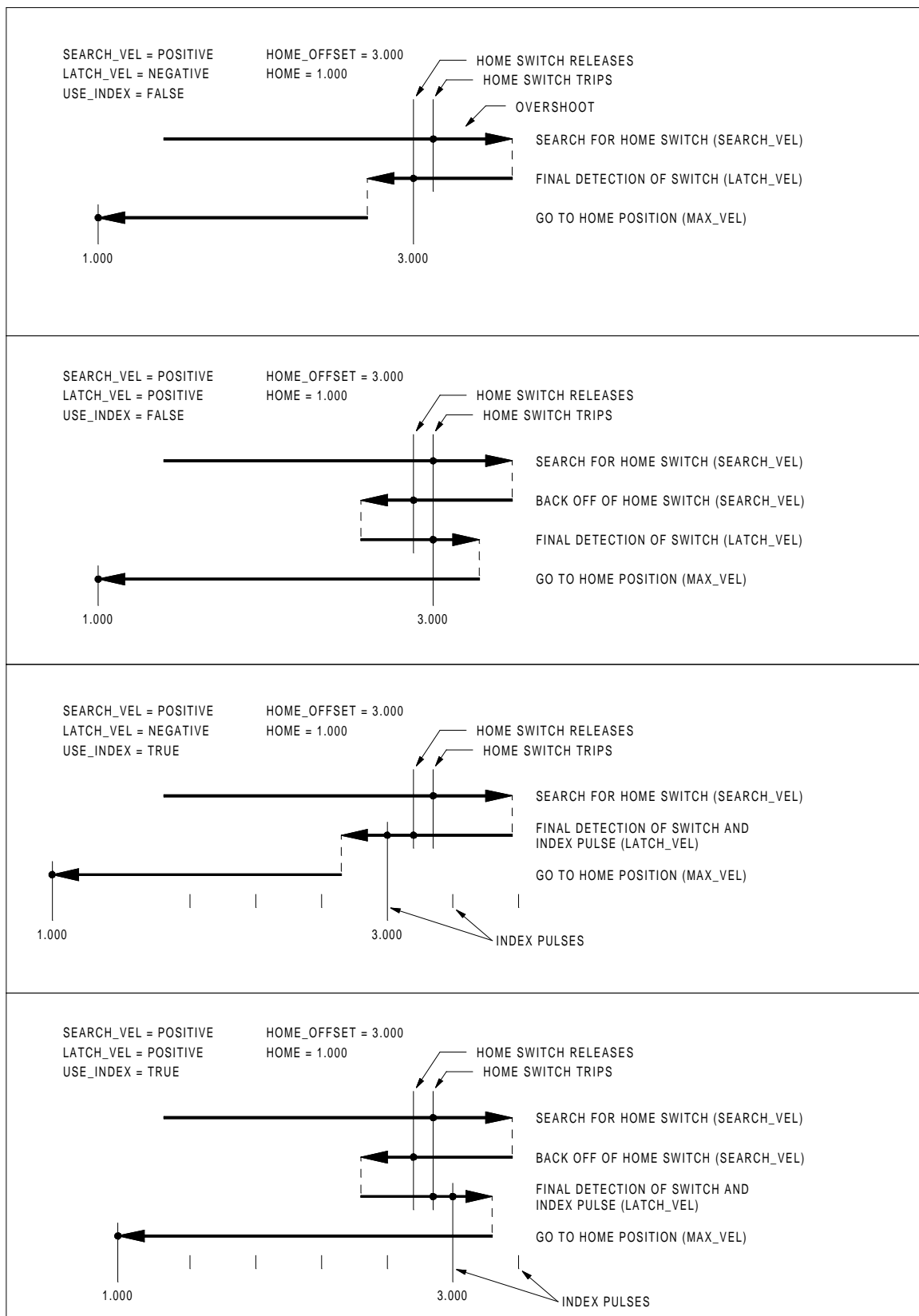


Figure 5.1: Homing Sequences

and this parameter is nonzero, EMC goes ahead to the index pulse search. If 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL' is non-zero and this parameter is zero, it is an error and the homing operation will fail. The default value is zero.

5.4.3.3 HOME_IGNORE_LIMITS

Can hold the values YES / NO. This flag determines whether EMC will ignore the limit switch inputs. Some machine configurations do not use a separate home switch, instead they route one of the limit switch signals to the home switch input as well. In this case, EMC needs to ignore that limit during homing. The default value for this parameter is NO.

5.4.3.4 HOME_USE_INDEX

Specifies whether or not there is an index pulse. If the flag is true (HOME_USE_INDEX = YES), EMC will latch on the rising edge of the index pulse. If false, EMC will latch on either the rising or falling edge of the home switch (depending on the signs of 'HOME_SEARCH_VEL' and 'HOME_LATCH_VEL'). The default value is NO.

5.4.3.5 HOME_OFFSET

Contains the location of the home switch or index pulse, in joint coordinates. It can also be treated as the distance between the point where the switch or index pulse is latched and the zero point of the joint. After detecting the index pulse, EMC sets the joint coordinate of the current point to "HOME_OFFSET". The default value is zero.

5.4.3.6 HOME

The position that the joint will go to upon completion of the homing sequence. After detecting the index pulse, and setting the coordinate of that point to "HOME_OFFSET", EMC makes a move to "HOME" as the final step of the homing process. The default value is zero. Note that even if this parameter is the same as "HOME_OFFSET", the axis will slightly overshoot the latched position as it stops. Therefore there will always be a small move at this time (unless HOME_SEARCH_VEL is zero, and the entire search/latch stage was skipped). This final move will be made at the joint's maximum velocity. Since the axis is now homed, there should be no risk of crashing the machine, and a rapid move is the quickest way to finish the homing sequence. ⁵

5.4.3.7 HOME_IS_SHARED

If there is not a separate home switch input for this axis, but a number of momentary switches wired to the same pin, set this value to 1 to prevent homing from starting if one of the shared switches is already closed. Set this value to 0 to permit homing even if the switch is already closed.

5.4.3.8 HOME_SEQUENCE

Used to define a multi-axis homing sequence ("HOME ALL") and enforce homing order (e.g., Z may not be homed if X is not yet homed). An axis may be homed after all axes with a lower HOME_SEQUENCE have already been homed and are at the HOME_OFFSET. If two axes have the same HOME_SEQUENCE, they may be homed at the same time. If HOME_SEQUENCE is -1 or not specified then this joint will not be homed by the HOME ALL sequence. HOME_SEQUENCE numbers start with 0 and there may be no unused numbers.

⁵The distinction between 'home' and 'home_offset' is not as clear as I would like. I intend to make a small drawing and example to help clarify it.

Chapter 6

Introduction

6.1 What is HAL?

HAL stands for Hardware Abstraction Layer. At the highest level, it is simply a way to allow a number of “building blocks” to be loaded and interconnected to assemble a complex system. The “Hardware” part is because HAL was originally designed to make it easier to configure EMC for a wide variety of hardware devices. Many of the building blocks are drivers for hardware devices. However, HAL can do more than just configure hardware drivers.

6.1.1 HAL is based on traditional system design techniques

HAL is based on the same principles that are used to design hardware circuits and systems, so it is useful to examine those principles first.

Any system (including a CNC machine), consists of interconnected components. For the CNC machine, those components might be the main controller, servo amps or stepper drives, motors, encoders, limit switches, pushbutton pendants, perhaps a VFD for the spindle drive, a PLC to run a toolchanger, etc. The machine builder must select, mount and wire these pieces together to make a complete system.

6.1.1.1 Part Selection

The machine builder does not need to worry about how each individual part works. He treats them as black boxes. During the design stage, he decides which parts he is going to use - steppers or servos, which brand of servo amp, what kind of limit switches and how many, etc. The integrator’s decisions about which specific components to use is based on what that component does and the specifications supplied by the manufacturer of the device. The size of a motor and the load it must drive will affect the choice of amplifier needed to run it. The choice of amplifier may affect the kinds of feedback needed by the amp and the velocity or position signals that must be sent to the amp from a control.

In the HAL world, the integrator must decide what HAL components are needed. Usually every interface card will require a driver. Additional components may be needed for software generation of step pulses, PLC functionality, and a wide variety of other tasks.

6.1.1.2 Interconnection Design

The designer of a hardware system not only selects the parts, he also decides how those parts will be interconnected. Each black box has terminals, perhaps only two for a simple switch, or dozens

for a servo drive or PLC. They need to be wired together. The motors connect to the servo amps, the limit switches connect to the controller, and so on. As the machine builder works on the design, he creates a large wiring diagram that shows how all the parts should be interconnected.

When using HAL, components are interconnected by signals. The designer must decide which signals are needed, and what they should connect.

6.1.1.3 Implementation

Once the wiring diagram is complete it is time to build the machine. The pieces need to be acquired and mounted, and then they are interconnected according to the wiring diagram. In a physical system, each interconnection is a piece of wire that needs to be cut and connected to the appropriate terminals.

HAL provides a number of tools to help “build” a HAL system. Some of the tools allow you to “connect” (or disconnect) a single “wire”. Other tools allow you to save a complete list of all the parts, wires, and other information about the system, so that it can be “rebuilt” with a single command.

6.1.1.4 Testing

Very few machines work right the first time. While testing, the builder may use a meter to see whether a limit switch is working or to measure the DC voltage going to a servo motor. He may hook up an oscilloscope to check the tuning of a drive, or to look for electrical noise. He may find a problem that requires the wiring diagram to be changed; perhaps a part needs to be connected differently or replaced with something completely different.

HAL provides the software equivalents of a voltmeter, oscilloscope, signal generator, and other tools needed for testing and tuning a system. The same commands used to build the system can be used to make changes as needed.

6.1.2 Summary

This document is aimed at people who already know how to do this kind of hardware system integration, but who do not know how to connect the hardware to EMC.

The traditional hardware design as described above ends at the edge of the main control. Outside the control are a bunch of relatively simple boxes, connected together to do whatever is needed. Inside, the control is a big mystery – one huge black box that we hope works.

HAL extends this traditional hardware design method to the inside of the big black box. It makes device drivers and even some internal parts of the controller into smaller black boxes that can be interconnected and even replaced just like the external hardware. It allows the “system wiring diagram” to show part of the internal controller, rather than just a big black box. And most importantly it allows the integrator to test and modify the controller using the same methods he would use on the rest of the hardware.

Terms like motors, amps, and encoders are familiar to most machine integrators. When we talk about using extra flexible eight conductor shielded cable to connect an encoder to the servo input board in the computer, the reader immediately understands what it is and is led to the question, “what kinds of connectors will I need to make up each end.” The same sort of thinking is essential for the HAL but the specific train of thought may take a bit to get on track. Using HAL words may seem a bit strange at first, but the concept of working from one connection to the next is the same.

This idea of extending the wiring diagram to the inside of the controller is what HAL is all about. If you are comfortable with the idea of interconnecting hardware black boxes, you will probably have little trouble using HAL to interconnect software black boxes.

6.2 HAL Concepts

This section is a glossary that defines key HAL terms but it is a bit different than a traditional glossary because these terms are not arranged in alphabetical order. They are arranged by their relationship or flow in the HAL way of things.

Component: When we talked about hardware design, we referred to the individual pieces as "parts", "building blocks", "black boxes", etc. The HAL equivalent is a "component" or "HAL component". (This document uses "HAL component" when there is likely to be confusion with other kinds of components, but normally just uses "component".) A HAL component is a piece of software with well-defined inputs, outputs, and behavior, that can be installed and interconnected as needed.

Parameter: Many hardware components have adjustments that are not connected to any other components but still need to be accessed. For example, servo amps often have trim pots to allow for tuning adjustments, and test points where a meter or scope can be attached to view the tuning results. HAL components also can have such items, which are referred to as "parameters". There are two types of parameters: Input parameters are equivalent to trim pots - they are values that can be adjusted by the user, and remain fixed once they are set. Output parameters cannot be adjusted by the user - they are equivalent to test points that allow internal signals to be monitored.

Pin: Hardware components have terminals which are used to interconnect them. The HAL equivalent is a "pin" or "HAL pin". ("HAL pin" is used when needed to avoid confusion.) All HAL pins are named, and the pin names are used when interconnecting them. HAL pins are software entities that exist only inside the computer.

Physical_Pin: Many I/O devices have real physical pins or terminals that connect to external hardware, for example the pins of a parallel port connector. To avoid confusion, these are referred to as "physical pins". These are the things that "stick out" into the real world.

Signal: In a physical machine, the terminals of real hardware components are interconnected by wires. The HAL equivalent of a wire is a "signal" or "HAL signal". HAL signals connect HAL pins together as required by the machine builder. HAL signals can be disconnected and reconnected at will (even while the machine is running).

Type: When using real hardware, you would not connect a 24 volt relay output to the +/-10V analog input of a servo amp. HAL pins have the same restrictions, which are based upon their type. Both pins and signals have types, and signals can only be connected to pins of the same type. Currently there are 4 types, as follows:

- BIT - a single TRUE/FALSE or ON/OFF value
- FLOAT - a 32 bit floating point value, with approximately 24 bits of resolution and over 200 bits of dynamic range.
- U32 - a 32 bit unsigned integer, legal values are 0 to +4294967295
- S32 - a 32 bit signed integer, legal values are -2147483648 to +2147483647

Function: Real hardware components tend to act immediately on their inputs. For example, if the input voltage to a servo amp changes, the output also changes automatically. However software components cannot act "automatically". Each component has specific code that must be executed to do whatever that component is supposed to do. In some cases, that code simply runs as part of the component. However in most cases, especially in realtime components, the code must run in a specific sequence and at specific intervals. For example, inputs should be read before calculations are performed on the input data, and outputs should not be written until the calculations are done. In these cases, the code is made available to the system in

the form of one or more "functions". Each function is a block of code that performs a specific action. The system integrator can use "threads" to schedule a series of functions to be executed in a particular order and at specific time intervals.

Thread: A "thread" is a list of functions that runs at specific intervals as part of a realtime task. When a thread is first created, it has a specific time interval (period), but no functions. Functions can be added to the thread, and will be executed in order every time the thread runs.

As an example, suppose we have a parport component named `hal_parport`. That component defines one or more HAL pins for each physical pin. The pins are described in that component's doc section: their names, how each pin relates to the physical pin, are they inverted, can you change polarity, etc. But that alone doesn't get the data from the HAL pins to the physical pins. It takes code to do that, and that is where functions come into the picture. The parport component needs at least two functions: one to read the physical input pins and update the HAL pins, the other to take data from the HAL pins and write it to the physical output pins. Both of these functions are part of the parport driver.

6.3 HAL components

Each HAL component is a piece of software with well-defined inputs, outputs, and behavior, that can be installed and interconnected as needed. This section lists some of the available components and a brief description of what each does. Complete details for each component are available later in this document.

6.3.1 External Programs with HAL hooks

motion A realtime module that accepts NML motion commands and interacts with HAL

iocontrol A user space module that accepts NML I/O commands and interacts with HAL

classicladder A PLC using HAL for all I/O

halui A user space program that interacts with HAL and sends NML commands, it is intended to work as a full User Interface using external knobs & switches

6.3.2 Internal Components

stepgen Software step pulse generator with position loop. See section ??

encoder Software based encoder counter. See section ??

pid Proportional/Integral/Derivative control loops. See section ??

siggen A sine/cosine/triangle/square wave generator for testing. See section ??

supply a simple source for testing

blocks assorted useful components (mux, demux, or, and, integ, ddt, limit, wcomp, etc.)

6.3.3 Hardware Drivers

hal_ax5214h A driver for the Axiom Measurement & Control AX5241H digital I/O board

hal_m5i20 Mesa Electronics 5i20 board

hal_motenc Vital Systems MOTENC-100 board

hal_parport PC parallel port. See section [8.1](#)

hal_ppmc Pico Systems family of controllers (PPMC, USC and UPC)

hal_stg Servo To Go card (version 1 & 2)

hal_vti Vigilant Technologies PCI ENCDAC-4 controller

6.3.4 Tools and Utilities

halcmd Command line tool for configuration and tuning. See section ??

halgui GUI tool for configuration and tuning (not implemented yet).

halmeter A handy multimeter for HAL signals. See section ??

halscope A full featured digital storage oscilloscope for HAL signals. See section ??

Each of these building blocks is described in detail in later chapters.

6.4 Tinkertoys, Erector Sets, Legos and the HAL

A first introduction to HAL concepts can be mind boggling. Building anything with blocks can be a challenge but some of the toys that we played with as kids can be an aid to building things with the HAL.

6.4.1 Tower

I'm watching as my son and his six year old daughter build a tower from a box full of random sized blocks, rods, jar lids and such. The aim is to see how tall they can make the tower. The narrower the base the more blocks left to stack on top. But the narrower the base, the less stable the tower. I see them studying both the next block and the shelf where they want to place it to see how it will balance out with the rest of the tower.

The notion of stacking cards to see how tall you can make a tower is a very old and honored way of spending spare time. At first read, the integrator may have gotten the impression that building a HAL was a bit like that. It can be but with proper planning an integrator can build a stable system as complex as the machine at hand requires.

6.4.2 Erector Sets¹

What was great about the sets was the building blocks, metal struts and angles and plates, all with regularly spaced holes. You could design things and hold them together with the little screws and nuts.

¹The Erector Set was an invention of AC Gilbert

I got my first erector set for my fourth birthday. I know the box suggested a much older age than I was. Perhaps my father was really giving himself a present. I had a hard time with the little screws and nuts. I really needed four arms, one each for the screwdriver, screw, parts to be bolted together, and nut. Perseverance, along with father's eventual boredom, got me to where I had built every project in the booklet. Soon I was lusting after the bigger sets that were also printed on that paper. Working with those regular sized pieces opened up a world of construction for me and soon I moved well beyond the illustrated projects.

Hal components are not all the same size and shape but they allow for grouping into larger units that will do useful work. In this sense they are like the parts of an Erector set. Some components are long and thin. They essentially connect high level commands to specific physical pins. Other components are more like the rectangular platforms upon which whole machines could be built. An integrator will quickly get beyond the brief examples and begin to bolt together components in ways that are unique to them.

6.4.3 Tinkertoys²

Wooden Tinker toys had a more humane feel than the cold steel of Erector Sets. The heart of construction with Tinker Toys was a round connector with eight holes equally spaced around the circumference. It also had a hole in the center that was perpendicular to all the holes around the hub.

Hubs were connected with rods of several different lengths. Builders would make large wheels by using these rods as spokes sticking out from the center hub.

My favorite project was a rotating space station. Short spokes radiated from all the holes in the center hub and connected with hubs on the ends of each spoke. These outer hubs were connected to each other with longer spokes. I'd spend hours dreaming of living in such a device, walking from hub to hub around the outside as it slowly rotated producing near gravity in weightless space. Supplies traveled through the spokes in elevators that transferred them to and from rockets docked at the center hub while they transferred their precious cargos.

The idea of one pin or component being the hub for many connections is also an easy concept within the HAL. Examples two and four (see section 7) connect the meter and scope to signals that are intended to go elsewhere. Less easy is the notion of a hub for several incoming signals but that is also possible with proper use of functions within that hub component that handle those signals as they arrive from other components.

Another thought that comes forward from this toy is a mechanical representation of HAL threads. A thread might look a bit like a centipede, caterpillar, or earwig. A backbone of hubs, HAL components, strung together with rods, HAL signals. Each component takes in its own parameters and input pins and passes on output pins and parameters to the next component. Signals travel along the backbone from end to end and are added to or modified by each component in turn.

Threads are all about timing and doing a set of tasks from end to end. A mechanical representation is available with Tinkertoys also when we think of the length of the toy as a measure of the time taken to get from one end to the other. A very different thread or backbone is created by connecting the same set of hubs with different length rods. The total length of the backbone can be changed by the length of rods used to connect the hubs. The order of operations is the same but the time to get from beginning to end is very different.

²Tinkertoy is now a registered trademark of the Hasbro company.

6.4.4 A Lego Example³

When Lego blocks first arrived in our stores they were pretty much all the same size and shape. Sure there were half sized one and a few quarter sized as well but that rectangular one did most of the work. Lego blocks interconnected by snapping the holes in the underside of one onto the pins that stuck up on another. By overlapping layers, the joints between could be made very strong, even around corners or tees.

I watched my children and grandchildren build with legos – the same legos. There are a few thousand of them in an old ratty but heavy duty cardboard box that sits in a corner of the recreation room. It stays there in the open because it was too much trouble to put the box away and then get it back out for every visit and it is always used during a visit. There must be Lego parts in there from a couple dozen different sets. The little booklets that came with them are long gone but the magic of building with interlocking pieces all the same size is something to watch.

6.5 Timing Issues In HAL

Unlike the physical wiring models between black boxes that we have said that HAL is based upon, simply connecting two pins with a hal-signal falls far short of the action of the physical case.

True relay logic consists of relays connected together, and when a contact opens or closes, current flows (or stops) immediately. Other coils may change state, etc, and it all just "happens". But in PLC style ladder logic, it doesn't work that way. Usually in a single pass through the ladder, each rung is evaluated in the order in which it appears, and only once per pass. A perfect example is a single rung ladder, with a NC contact in series with a coil. The contact and coil belong to the same relay.

If this were a conventional relay, as soon as the coil is energized, the contacts begin to open and de-energize it. That means the contacts close again, etc, etc. The relay becomes a buzzer.

With a PLC, if the coil is OFF and the contact is closed when the PLC begins to evaluate the rung, then when it finishes that pass, the coil is ON. The fact that turning on the coil opens the contact feeding it is ignored until the next pass. On the next pass, the PLC sees that the contact is open, and de-energizes the coil. So the relay still switches rapidly between on and off, but at a rate determined by how often the PLC evaluates the rung.

In HAL, the function is the code that evaluates the rung(s). In fact, the HAL-aware realtime version of ClassicLadder exports a function to do exactly that. Meanwhile, a thread is the thing that runs the function at specific time intervals. Just like you can choose to have a PLC evaluate all its rungs every 10mS, or every second, you can define HAL threads with different periods.

What distinguishes one thread from another is *not* what the thread does - that is determined by which functions are connected to it. The real distinction is simply how often a thread runs.

In EMC you might have a 50 μ s thread and a 1ms thread. These would be created based on BASE_PERIOD and SERVO_PERIOD—the actual times depend on the ini.

The next step is to decide what each thread needs to do. Some of those decisions are the same in (nearly) any emc system—For instance, motion-command-handler is always added to servo-thread.

Other connections would be made by the integrator. These might include hooking the STG driver's encoder read and DAC write functions to the servo thread, or hooking stepgen's function to the base-thread, along with the parport function(s) to write the steps to the port.

³The Lego name is a trademark of the Lego company.

Chapter 7

HAL Tutorial

7.1 Before we start

Configuration moves from theory to device – HAL device that is. For those who have had just a bit of computer programming, this section is the “Hello World” of the HAL. As noted above `halrun` can be used to create a working system. It is a command line or text file tool for configuration and tuning. The following examples illustrate its setup and operation.

7.1.1 Notation

Command line examples are presented in **bold typewriter** font. Responses from the computer will be in `typewriter` font. Text inside square brackets `[like-this]` is optional. Text inside angle brackets `<like-this>` represents a field that can take on different values, and the adjacent paragraph will explain the appropriate values. Text items separated by a vertical bar means that one or the other, but not both, should be present. All command line examples assume that you are in the `emc2/` directory, and paths will be shown accordingly when needed.

7.1.2 The RTAPI environment

RTAPI stands for Real Time Application Programming Interface. Many HAL components work in realtime, and all HAL components store data in shared memory so realtime components can access it. Normal Linux does not support realtime programming or the type of shared memory that HAL needs. Fortunately there are realtime operating systems (RTOS's) that provide the necessary extensions to Linux. Unfortunately, each RTOS does things a little differently.

To address these differences, the EMC team came up with RTAPI, which provides a consistent way for programs to talk to the RTOS. If you are a programmer who wants to work on the internals of EMC, you may want to study `emc2/src/rtapi/rtapi.h` to understand the API. But if you are a normal person all you need to know about RTAPI is that it (and the RTOS) needs to be loaded into the memory of your computer before you do anything with HAL.

For this tutorial, we are going to assume that you have successfully compiled the `emc2/` source tree and, if necessary, invoked the `emc-environment` script to prepare your shell. In that case, all you need to do is load the required RTOS and RTAPI modules into memory. Just run the following command:

```
emc2$ halrun
halcmd:
```

With the realtime OS and RTAPI loaded, we can move into the first example. Notice that the prompt has changed from the shell's "\$" to "halcmd". This is because subsequent commands will be interpreted as HAL commands, not shell commands. `halrun` is a simple shell script, and it is more or less equivalent to running

```
emc2$ realtime start
emc2$ halcmd -kf
```

When `halcmd` exits, `halrun` stops the realtime system, just like

```
emc2$ realtime stop
```

You can also supply arguments to `halrun` that are passed on to `halcmd`, or give the name of a `.hal` file. Because `halrun` stops the realtime system when it exits, the `hal` file run in this way will typically end with a command that waits for completion, like `loadrt -w halscope`.

7.2 Tab-completion

Your version of `halcmd` may include tab-completion. Instead of completing filenames as a shell does, it completes commands with HAL identifiers. Try pressing tab after starting a HAL command:

```
halcmd: lo<TAB>
loadrt      loadusr  lock
halcmd: loadrt d<TAB>
ddt         debounce
```

7.3 A Simple Example

7.3.1 Loading a realtime component

For the first example, we will use a HAL component called `siggen`, which is a simple signal generator. A complete description of the `siggen` component can be found in section ?? of this document. It is a realtime component, implemented as a Linux kernel module. To load `siggen` use the `halcmd loadrt` command:

```
halcmd: loadrt siggen
```

7.3.2 Examining the HAL

Now that the module is loaded, it is time to introduce `halcmd`, the command line tool used to configure the HAL. This tutorial will introduce some `halcmd` features, for a more complete description try `man halcmd`, or see the `halcmd` reference in section ?? of this document. The first `halcmd` feature is the `show` command. This command displays information about the current state of the HAL. To show all installed components:

```
halcmd: show comp
Loaded HAL Components:
ID      Type  Name                PID    State
32769   RT      siggen              9775   ready
9775    User    halcmd9775          9775   initializing
```

Since `halcmd` itself is a HAL component, it will always show up in the list¹. The list also shows the `siggen` component that we installed in the previous step. The “RT” under “Type” indicates that `siggen` is a realtime component.

Next, let’s see what pins `siggen` makes available:

```
halcmd: show pin
Component Pins:
Owner  Type  Dir   Value      Name 02    float -W    0.00000e+00  siggen.0.cosine
32769  float OUT   0.00000e+00  siggen.0.sawtooth
32769  float OUT   0.00000e+00  siggen.0.sine
32769  float OUT   0.00000e+00  siggen.0.square
32769  float OUT   0.00000e+00  siggen.0.triangle
```

This command displays all of the pins in the HAL - a complex system could have dozens or hundreds of pins. But right now there are only five pins. All five of these pins are floating point, and all five carry data out of the `siggen` component. Since we have not yet executed the code contained within the component, all the pins have a value of zero.

The next step is to look at parameters:

```
halcmd: show param
Parameters:
Owner  Type  Dir   Value      Name
32769  float RW    1.00000e+00  siggen.0.amplitude
32769  float RW    1.00000e+00  siggen.0.frequency
32769  float RW    0.00000e+00  siggen.0.offset
32769  s32   RO      0           siggen.0.update.time
32769  s32   RW      0           siggen.0.update.tmax
```

The `show param` command shows all the parameters in the HAL. Right now each parameter has the default value it was given when the component was loaded. Note the column labeled `Dir`. The parameters labeled `-W` are writeable ones that are never changed by the component itself, instead they are meant to be changed by the user to control the component. We will see how to do this later. Parameters labeled `R-` are read only parameters. They can be changed only by the component. Finally, parameter labeled `RW` are read-write parameters. That means that they are changed by the component, but can also be changed by the user. Note: the parameters `siggen.0.update.time` and `siggen.0.update.tmax` are for debugging purposes, and won’t be covered in this section.

Most realtime components export one or more functions to actually run the realtime code they contain. Let’s see what function(s) `siggen` exported:

```
halcmd: show funct
Exported Functions:
Owner CodeAddr  Arg   FP  Users  Name
32769  b7f74ac5 b7d0c0b4 YES   0  siggen.0.update
```

The `siggen` component exported a single function. It requires floating point. It is not currently linked to any threads, so “users” is zero².

¹The number after `halcmd` in the component list is the process ID. It is possible to run more than one copy of `halcmd` at the same time (in different windows for example), so the PID is added to the end of the name to make it unique.

²The `codeaddr` and `arg` fields were used in development, and should probably be removed from the `halcmd` listing.

7.3.3 Making realtime code run

To actually run the code contained in the function `siggen.0.update`, we need a realtime thread. The component called `threads` that is used to create a new thread. Lets create a thread called `test-thread` with a period of 1mS (1000000nS):

```
halcmd: loadrt threads name1=test-thread period1=1000000
```

Let's see if that worked:

```
halcmd: show thread
Realtime Threads:
  Period  FP   Name      (Time, Max-Time)
    999849 YES test-thread  ( 0, 0 )
```

It did. The period is not exactly 1000000nS because of hardware limitations, but we have a thread that runs at approximately the correct rate, and which can handle floating point functions. The next step is to connect the function to the thread:

```
halcmd: addf siggen.0.update test-thread
```

Up till now, we've been using `halcmd` only to look at the HAL. However, this time we used the `addf` (add function) command to actually change something in the HAL. We told `halcmd` to add the function `siggen.0.update` to the thread `test-thread`, and if we look at the thread list again, we see that it succeeded:

```
halcmd: show thread
Realtime Threads:
  Period  FP   Name      (Time, Max-Time)
    999849 YES test-thread  ( 0, 0 )
                1 siggen.0.update
```

There is one more step needed before the `siggen` component starts generating signals. When the HAL is first started, the thread(s) are not actually running. This is to allow you to completely configure the system before the realtime code starts. Once you are happy with the configuration, you can start the realtime code like this:

```
halcmd: start
```

Now the signal generator is running. Let's look at its output pins:

```
halcmd: show pin
Component Pins:
Owner Type Dir      Value      Name
32769 float OUT    2.12177e-01 siggen.0.cosine
32769 float OUT   -5.64055e-01 siggen.0.sawtooth
32769 float OUT    9.79820e-01 siggen.0.sine
32769 float OUT   -1.00000e+00 siggen.0.square
32769 float OUT    1.28110e-01 siggen.0.triangle
halcmd: show pin
Component Pins:
Owner Type Dir      Value      Name
32769 float OUT    5.19530e-01 siggen.0.cosine
32769 float OUT    6.73893e-01 siggen.0.sawtooth
32769 float OUT   -8.54452e-01 siggen.0.sine
32769 float OUT    1.00000e+00 siggen.0.square
32769 float OUT    3.47785e-01 siggen.0.triangle
```

We did two `show pin` commands in quick succession, and you can see that the outputs are no longer zero. The sine, cosine, sawtooth, and triangle outputs are changing constantly. The square output is also working, however it simply switches from +1.0 to -1.0 every cycle.

7.3.4 Changing parameters

The real power of HAL is that you can change things. For example, we can use the `setp` command to set the value of a parameter. Let's change the amplitude of the signal generator from 1.0 to 5.0:

```
halcmd: setp siggen.0.amplitude 5
emc2$
```

Check the parameters and pins again:

```
halcmd: setp siggen.0.amplitude 5
halcmd: show param
Parameters:
Owner  Type  Dir  Value      Name
32769  float RW   5.00000e+00 siggen.0.amplitude
32769  float RW   1.00000e+00 siggen.0.frequency
32769  float RW   0.00000e+00 siggen.0.offset
32769  s32   RO    397        siggen.0.update.time
32769  s32   RW   109100     siggen.0.update.tmax
halcmd: show pin
Component Pins:
Owner  Type  Dir  Value      Name
32769  float OUT  4.78453e+00 siggen.0.cosine
32769  float OUT -4.53106e+00 siggen.0.sawtooth
32769  float OUT  1.45198e+00 siggen.0.sine
32769  float OUT -5.00000e+00 siggen.0.square
32769  float OUT  4.02213e+00 siggen.0.triangle
```

Note that the value of parameter `siggen.0.amplitude` has changed to 5.000, and that the pins now have larger values.

7.3.5 Saving the HAL configuration

Most of what we have done with `halcmd` so far has simply been viewing things with the `show` command. However two of the commands actually changed things. As we design more complex systems with HAL, we will use many commands to configure things just the way we want them. HAL has the memory of an elephant, and will retain that configuration until we shut it down. But what about next time? We don't want to manually enter a bunch of commands every time we want to use the system. We can save the configuration of the entire HAL with a single command:

```
halcmd: save
# components
loadrt threads name1=test-thread period1=1000000
loadrt siggen
# signals
# links
# parameter values
setp siggen.0.amplitude 5.00000e+00
setp siggen.0.frequency 1.00000e+00
```

```
setp siggen.0.offset 0.00000e+00
# realtime thread/function links
addf siggen.0.update test-thread
```

The output of the `save` command is a sequence of HAL commands. If you start with an “empty” HAL and run all these commands, you will get the configuration that existed when the `save` command was issued. To save these commands for later use, we simply redirect the output to a file:

```
halcmd: save all saved.hal
```

7.3.6 Restoring the HAL configuration

To restore the HAL configuration stored in `saved.hal`, we need to execute all of those HAL commands. To do that, we use `-f <filename>` which reads commands from a file, and `-I` which shows the `halcmd` prompt after executing the commands:

```
emc2$ halrun -I -f saved.hal
```

Notice that there is not a ‘start’ command in `saved.hal`. It’s necessary to issue it again (or edit `saved.hal` to add it there):

```
halcmd: start
```

7.4 Looking at the HAL with halmeter

You can build very complex HAL systems without ever using a graphical interface. However there is something satisfying about seeing the result of your work. The first and simplest GUI tool for the HAL is `halmeter`. It is a very simple program that is the HAL equivalent of the handy Fluke multimeter (or Simpson analog meter for the old timers).

We will use the `siggen` component again to check out `halmeter`. If you just finished the previous example, then `siggen` is already loaded. If not, we can load it just like we did before:

```
emc2$ halrun
halcmd: loadrt siggen
halcmd: loadrt threads name1=test-thread period1=1000000
halcmd: addf siggen.0.update test-thread
halcmd: start
halcmd: setp siggen.0.amplitude 5
```

7.4.1 Starting halmeter

At this point we have the `siggen` component loaded and running. It’s time to start `halmeter`. Since `halmeter` is a GUI app, X must be running.

```
halcmd: loadusr halmeter
```

At the same time, a `halmeter` window opens on your screen, looking something like figure [7.1](#).

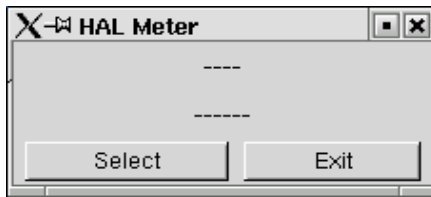


Figure 7.1: Halmeter at startup, nothing selected



Figure 7.2: Halmeter source selection dialog

7.4.2 Using halmeter

The meter in figure 7.1 isn't very useful, because it isn't displaying anything. To change that, click on the 'Select' button, which will open the probe selection dialog (figure 7.2).

This dialog has three tabs. The first tab displays all of the HAL pins in the system. The second one displays all the signals, and the third displays all the parameters. We would like to look at the pin `siggen.0.triangle` first, so click on it then click the 'OK' button. The probe selection dialog will close, and the meter looks something like figure 7.3.

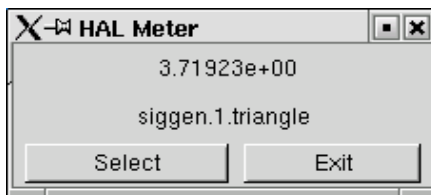


Figure 7.3: Halmeter displaying the value of a pin

You should see the value changing as `siggen` generates its triangle wave. Halmeter refreshes its display about 5 times per second.

If you want to quickly look at a number of pins, you can use the 'Accept' button in the source selection dialog. Click on 'Select' to open the dialog again. This time, click on another pin, like `siggen.0.cosine`, and then click 'Accept'. When you click 'Accept', the meter immediately begins to display the newly selected item, but the dialog does not close. Try displaying a parameter instead of a pin. Click on the 'Parameters' tab, then select a parameter and click 'Accept' again. You can very quickly move the "meter probes" from one item to the next with a couple of clicks.

To shut down halmeter, just click the exit button.

If you want to look at more than one pin, signal, or parameter at a time, you can just start more halmeters. The halmeter window was intentionally made very small so you could have a lot of them on the screen at once. ³

³Halmeter is due for a rewrite. The rewrite will do a number of things to make it nicer. Scientific notation will go away - it is a pain to read. Some form of ranging (including autoranging) will be added to allow it to display a wide range of numbers without using scientific notation. An "analog bar graph" display will also be added to give a quick indication of trends. When the rewrite is done, these screenshots and the accompanying text will be revised to match the new version.

7.5 A slightly more complex example.

Up till now we have only loaded one HAL component. But the whole idea behind the HAL is to allow you to load and connect a number of simple components to make up a complex system. The next example will use two components.

Before we can begin building this new example, we want to start with a clean slate. If you just finished one of the previous examples, we need to remove the all components and reload the RTAPI and HAL libraries:

```
halcmd: exit
emc2$ halrun
```

7.5.1 Installing the components

Now we are going to load the step pulse generator component. For a detailed description of this component refer to section ???. For now, we can skip the details, and just run the following commands:⁴

```
halrun: loadrt freqgen step_type=0,0
halcmd: loadrt siggen
halcmd: loadrt threads name1=fast fp1=0 period1=50000 name2=slow period2=1000000
```

The first command loads two step generators, both configured to generate stepping type 0. The second command loads our old friend siggen, and the third one creates two threads, a fast one with a period of 50 micro-seconds and a slow one with a period of 1mS. The fast thread doesn't support floating point functions.

As before, we can use `halcmd show` to take a look at the HAL. This time we have a lot more pins and parameters than before:

```
halcmd: show pin
Component Pins:
Owner  Type  Dir  Value      Name
03     float -W    0.00000e+00 siggen.0.cosine
03     float -W    0.00000e+00 siggen.0.sawtooth
03     float -W    0.00000e+00 siggen.0.sine
03     float -W    0.00000e+00 siggen.0.square
03     float -W    0.00000e+00 siggen.0.triangle
02     s32   -W      0          freqgen.0.counts
02     bit   -W     FALSE      freqgen.0.dir
02     float -W    0.00000e+00 freqgen.0.position
02     bit   -W     FALSE      freqgen.0.step
02     float R-    0.00000e+00 freqgen.0.velocity
02     s32   -W      0          freqgen.1.counts
02     bit   -W     FALSE      freqgen.1.dir
02     float -W    0.00000e+00 freqgen.1.position
02     bit   -W     FALSE      freqgen.1.step
02     float R-    0.00000e+00 freqgen.1.velocity
halcmd: show param
Parameters:
Owner  Type  Dir  Value      Name
03     float -W    1.00000e+00 siggen.0.amplitude
```

⁴The “\” at the end of a long line indicates line wrapping (needed for formatting this document). When entering the commands at the command line, simply skip the “\” (do not hit enter) and keep typing from the following line.

```

03      float  -W  1.00000e+00  siggen.0.frequency
03      float  -W  0.00000e+00  siggen.0.offset
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.0.dirhold
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.0.dirsetup
02      float  R-  0.00000e+00  freqgen.0.frequency
02      float  -W  0.00000e+00  freqgen.0.maxaccel
02      float  -W  1.00000e+15  freqgen.0.maxfreq
02      float  -W  1.00000e+00  freqgen.0.position-scale
02      s32    R-  0          freqgen.0.rawcounts
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.0.steplen
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.0.stepspace
02      float  -W  1.00000e+00  freqgen.0.velocity-scale
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.1.dirhold
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.1.dirsetup
02      float  R-  0.00000e+00  freqgen.1.frequency
02      float  -W  0.00000e+00  freqgen.1.maxaccel
02      float  -W  1.00000e+15  freqgen.1.maxfreq
02      float  -W  1.00000e+00  freqgen.1.position-scale
02      s32    R-  0          freqgen.1.rawcounts
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.1.steplen
02      u32    -W  000000001  freqgen.1.stepspace
02      float  -W  1.00000e+00  freqgen.1.velocity-scale

```

7.5.2 Connecting pins with signals

What we have is two step pulse generators, and a signal generator. Now it is time to create some HAL signals to connect the two components. We are going to pretend that the two step pulse generators are driving the X and Y axis of a machine. We want to move the table in circles. To do this, we will send a cosine signal to the X axis, and a sine signal to the Y axis. The siggen module creates the sine and cosine, but we need “wires” to connect the modules together. In the HAL, “wires” are called signals. We need to create two of them. We can call them anything we want, for this example they will be `X_vel` and `Y_vel`. The signal `X_vel` is intended to run from the cosine output of the signal generator to the velocity input of the first step pulse generator. The first step is to connect the signal to the signal generator output. To connect a signal to a pin we use the `net` command.

```
halcmd: net X_vel <= siggen.0.cosine
```

To see the effect of the `net` command, we show the signals again:

```

halcmd: show sig
signals:
Type      Value      Name
float     0.00000e+00  X_vel
                                <== siggen.0.cosine

```

When a signal is connected to one or more pins, the `show` command lists the pins immediately following the signal name. The “arrow” shows the direction of data flow - in this case, data flows from pin `siggen.0.cosine` to signal `X_vel`. Now let’s connect the `X_vel` to the velocity input of a step pulse generator:

```
halcmd: net X_vel => freqgen.0.velocity
```

We can also connect up the Y axis signal `Y_vel`. It is intended to run from the sine output of the signal generator to the input of the second step pulse generator. The following command accomplishes in one line what two `net` commands accomplished for `X_vel`:

```
halcmd: net Y_vel siggen.0.sine ==> freqgen.1.velocity
```

Now let's take a final look at the signals and the pins connected to them:

```
halcmd: show sig
Signals:
Type      Value      Name
float     0.00000e+00  X_vel
                                <== siggen.0.cosine
                                ==> freqgen.0.velocity
float     0.00000e+00  Y_vel
                                <== siggen.0.sine
                                ==> freqgen.1.velocity
```

The `show sig` command makes it clear exactly how data flows through the HAL. For example, the `X_vel` signal comes from pin `siggen.0.cosine`, and goes to pin `freqgen.0.velocity`.

7.5.3 Setting up realtime execution - threads and functions

Thinking about data flowing through “wires” makes pins and signals fairly easy to understand. Threads and functions are a little more difficult. Functions contain the computer instructions that actually get things done. Thread are the method used to make those instructions run when they are needed. First let's look at the functions available to us:

```
halcmd: show funct
Exported Functions:
Owner CodeAddr  Arg    FP  Users  Name
03    D89051C4  D88F10FC YES   0    siggen.0.update
02    D8902868  D88F1054 YES   0    freqgen.capture_position
02    D8902498  D88F1054 NO    0    freqgen.make_pulses
02    D89026F0  D88F1054 YES   0    freqgen.update_freq
```

In general, you will have to refer to the documentation for each component to see what its functions do. In this case, the function `siggen.0.update` is used to update the outputs of the signal generator. Every time it is executed, it calculates the values of the sine, cosine, triangle, and square outputs. To make smooth signals, it needs to run at specific intervals.

The other three functions are related to the step pulse generators:

The first one, `freqgen.capture_position`, is used for position feedback. It captures the value of an internal counter that counts the step pulses as they are generated. Assuming no missed steps, this counter indicates the position of the motor.

The main function for the step pulse generator is `freqgen.make_pulses`. Every time `make_pulses` runs it decides if it is time to take a step, and if so sets the outputs accordingly. For smooth step pulses, it should run as frequently as possible. Because it needs to run so fast, `make_pulses` is highly optimized and performs only a few calculations. Unlike the others, it does not need floating point math.

The last function, `freqgen.update_freq`, is responsible for doing scaling and some other calculations that need to be performed only when the frequency command changes.

What this means for our example is that we want to run `siggen.0.update` at a moderate rate to calculate the sine and cosine values. Immediately after we run `siggen.0.update`, we want to run `freqgen.update_freq` to load the new values into the step pulse generator. Finally we need to run `freqgen.make_pulses` as fast as possible for smooth pulses. Because we don't use position feedback, we don't need to run `freqgen.capture_position` at all.

We run functions by adding them to threads. Each thread runs at a specific rate. Let's see what threads we have available:

```

halcmd: show thread
Realtime Threads:
  Period   FP   Name
  1005720 YES  slow   ( 0, 0 )
  50286 NO   fast   ( 0, 0 )

```

The two threads were created when we loaded threads. The first one, `slow`, runs every millisecond, and is capable of running floating point functions. We will use it for `siggen.0.update` and `freqgen.update_freq`. The second thread is `fast`, which runs every 50 microseconds, and does not support floating point. We will use it for `freqgen.make_pulses`. To connect the functions to the proper thread, we use the `addf` command. We specify the function first, followed by the thread:

```

halcmd: addf siggen.0.update slow
halcmd: addf freqgen.update_freq slow
halcmd: addf freqgen.make_pulses fast

```

After we give these commands, we can run the `show thread` command again to see what happened:

```

halcmd: show thread
Realtime Threads:
  Period   FP   Name      (Time, Max-Time)
  1005720 YES  slow      ( 0, 0 )
                1 siggen.0.update
                2 freqgen.update-freq
  50286 NO   fast      ( 0, 0 )
                1 freqgen.make-pulses

```

Now each thread is followed by the names of the functions, in the order in which the functions will run.

7.5.4 Setting parameters

We are almost ready to start our HAL system. However we still need to adjust a few parameters. By default, the `siggen` component generates signals that swing from +1 to -1. For our example that is fine, we want the table speed to vary from +1 to -1 inches per second. However the scaling of the step pulse generator isn't quite right. By default, it generates an output frequency of 1 step per second with an input of 1.000. It is unlikely that one step per second will give us one inch per second of table movement. Let's assume instead that we have a 5 turn per inch leadscrew, connected to a 200 step per rev stepper with 10x microstepping. So it takes 2000 steps for one revolution of the screw, and 5 revolutions to travel one inch. that means the overall scaling is 10000 steps per inch. We need to multiply the velocity input to the step pulse generator by 10000 to get the proper output. That is exactly what the parameter `freqgen.n.velocity-scale` is for. In this case, both the X and Y axis have the same scaling, so we set the scaling parameters for both to 10000:

```

halcmd: setp freqgen.0.velocity-scale 10000
halcmd: setp freqgen.1.velocity-scale 10000

```

This velocity scaling means that when the pin `freqgen.0.velocity` is 1.000, the step generator will generate 10000 pulses per second (10KHz). With the motor and leadscrew described above, that will result in the axis moving at exactly 1.000 inches per second. This illustrates a key HAL concept - things like scaling are done at the lowest possible level, in this case in the step pulse generator. The internal signal `X_vel` is the velocity of the table in inches per second, and other components such as `siggen` don't know (or care) about the scaling at all. If we changed the leadscrew, or motor, we would change only the scaling parameter of the step pulse generator.

7.5.5 Run it!

We now have everything configured and are ready to start it up. Just like in the first example, we use the `start` command:

```
halcmd: start
```

Although nothing appears to happen, inside the computer the step pulse generator is cranking out step pulses, varying from 10KHz forward to 10KHz reverse and back again every second. Later in this tutorial we'll see how to bring those internal signals out to run motors in the real world, but first we want to look at them and see what is happening.

7.6 Taking a closer look with halscope.

The previous example generates some very interesting signals. But much of what happens is far too fast to see with halmeter. To take a closer look at what is going on inside the HAL, we want an oscilloscope. Fortunately HAL has one, called halscope.

7.6.1 Starting Halscope

Halscope has two parts - a realtime part that is loaded as a kernel module, and a user part that supplies the GUI and display. However, you don't need to worry about this, because the userspace portion will automatically request that the realtime part be loaded.

```
halcmd: loadusr halscope
```

The scope GUI window will open, immediately followed by a "Realtime function not linked" dialog that looks like figure 7.4⁵.

This dialog is where you set the sampling rate for the oscilloscope. For now we want to sample once per millisecond, so click on the 1.03mS thread "slow" (formerly "siggen.thread", see footnote), and leave the multiplier at 1. We will also leave the record length at 4047 samples, so that we can use up to four channels at one time. When you select a thread and then click "OK", the dialog disappears, and the scope window looks something like figure 7.5.

⁵Several of these screen captures refer to threads named "siggen.thread" and "stepgen.thread" instead of "slow" and "fast". When the screenshots were captured, the "threads" component didn't exist, and a different method was used to create threads, giving them different names. Also, the screenshots show pins, etc, as "stepgen.xxx" rather than "freqgen.xxx". The original name of the freqgen module was stepgen, and I haven't gotten around to re-doing all the screen shots since it was renamed. The name "stepgen" now refers to a different step pulse generator, one that accepts position instead of velocity commands. Both are described in detail later in this document.

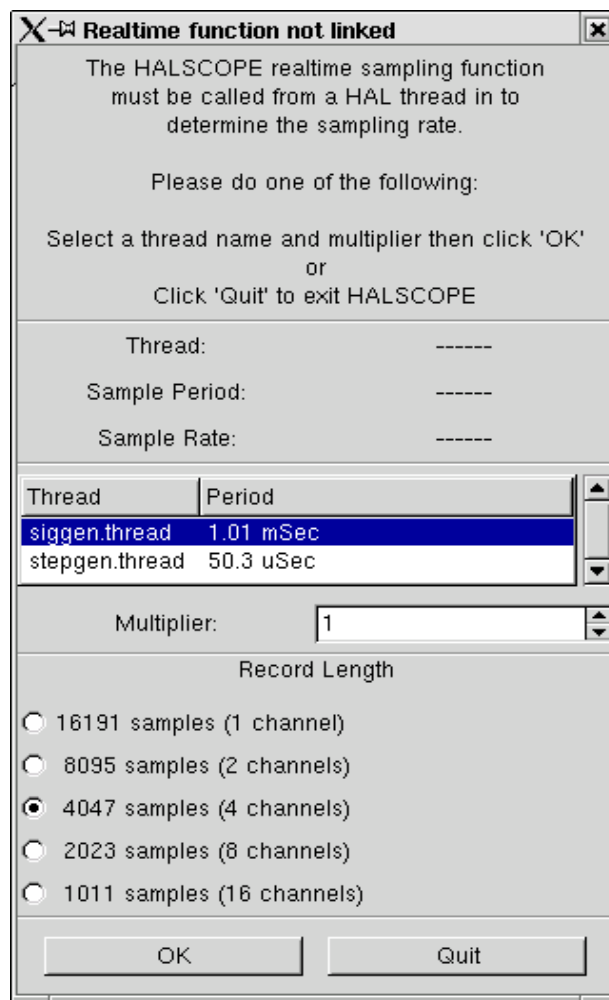


Figure 7.4: “Realtime function not linked” dialog

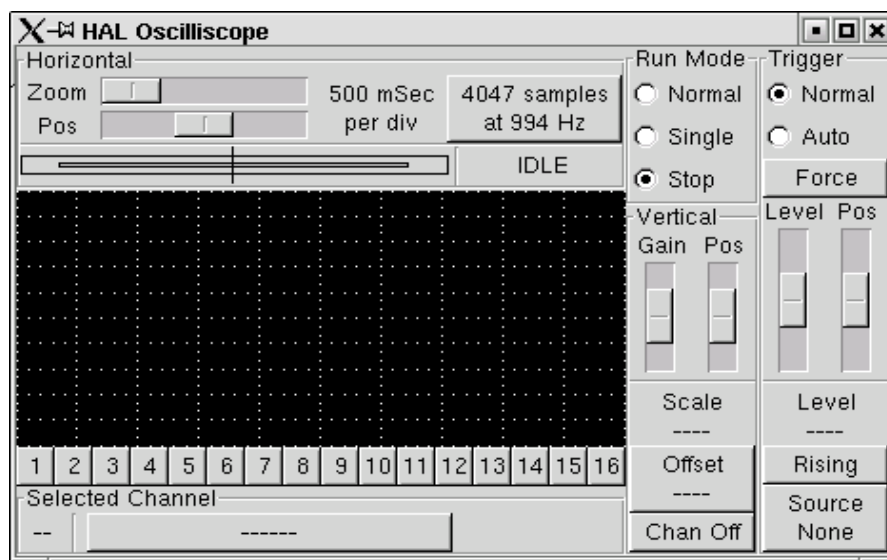


Figure 7.5: Initial scope window

7.6.2 Hooking up the “scope probes”

At this point, Halscope is ready to use. We have already selected a sample rate and record length, so the next step is to decide what to look at. This is equivalent to hooking “virtual scope probes” to the HAL. Halscope has 16 channels, but the number you can use at any one time depends on the record length - more channels means shorter records, since the memory available for the record is fixed at approximately 16,000 samples.

The channel buttons run across the bottom of the halscope screen. Click button “1”, and you will see the “Select Channel Source” dialog, figure 7.6. This dialog is very similar to the one used by Halmeter. We would like to look at the signals we defined earlier, so we click on the “Signals” tab, and the dialog displays all of the signals in the HAL (only two for this example).

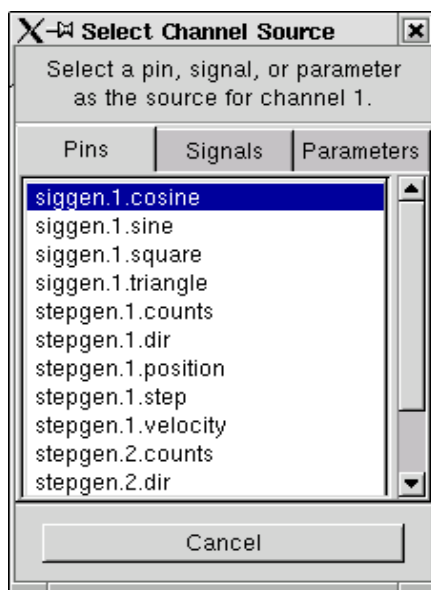


Figure 7.6: Select Channel Source dialog

To choose a signal, just click on it. In this case, we want to use channel 1 to display the signal “X_vel”. When we click on “X_vel”, the dialog closes and the channel is now selected. The channel 1 button is pressed in, and channel number 1 and the name “X_vel” appear below the row of buttons. That display always indicates the selected channel - you can have many channels on the screen, but the selected one is highlighted, and the various controls like vertical position and scale always work on the selected one. To add a signal to channel 2, click the “2” button. When the dialog pops up, click the “Signals” tab, then click on “Y_vel”.

We also want to look at the square and triangle wave outputs. There are no signals connected to those pins, so we use the “Pins” tab instead. For channel 3, select “siggen.0.triangle” and for channel 4, select “siggen.0.square”.

7.6.3 Capturing our first waveforms

Now that we have several probes hooked to the HAL, it's time to capture some waveforms. To start the scope, click the "Normal" button in the "Run Mode" section of the screen (upper right). Since we have a 4000 sample record length, and are acquiring 1000 samples per second, it will take halscope about 2 seconds to fill half of its buffer. During that time a progress bar just above the main screen will show the buffer filling. Once the buffer is half full, the scope waits for a trigger. Since we haven't configured one yet, it will wait forever. To manually trigger it, click the "Force" button in the "Trigger" section at the top right. You should see the remainder of the buffer fill, then the screen will display the captured waveforms. The result will look something like figure 7.7.

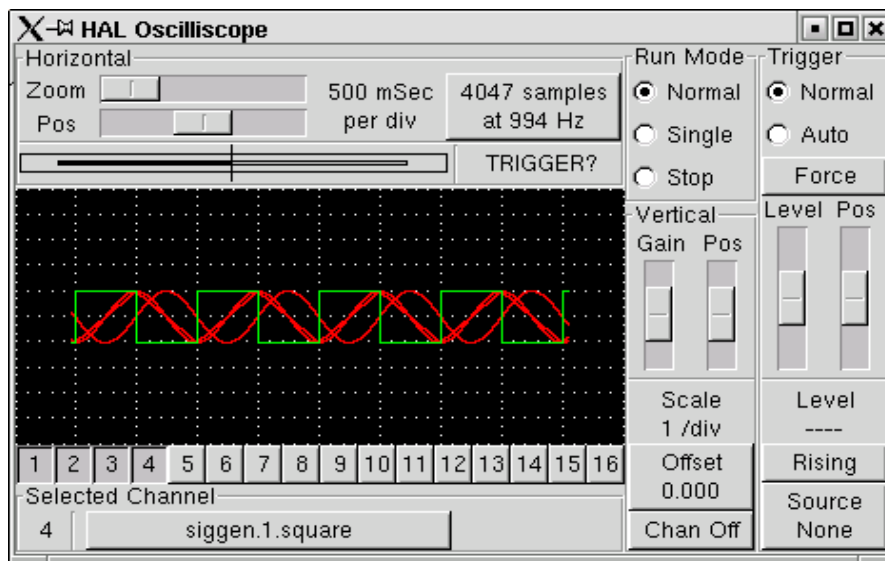


Figure 7.7: Captured Waveforms

The "Selected Channel" box at the bottom tells you that the green trace is the currently selected one, channel 4, which is displaying the value of the pin "siggen.1.square". Try clicking channel buttons 1 through 3 to highlight the other three traces.

7.6.4 Vertical Adjustments

The traces are rather hard to distinguish since all four are on top of each other. To fix this, we use the “Vertical” controls in the box to the right of the screen. These controls act on the currently selected channel. When adjusting the gain, notice that it covers a huge range - unlike a real scope, this one can display signals ranging from very tiny (pico-units) to very large (Tera-units). The position control moves the displayed trace up and down over the height of the screen only. For larger adjustments the offset button should be used (see the halscope reference in section ?? for details).

7.6.5 Triggering

Using the “Force” button is a rather unsatisfying way to trigger the scope. To set up real triggering, click on the “Source” button at the bottom right. It will pop up the “Trigger Source” dialog, which is simply a list of all the probes that are currently connected (Figure 7.8). Select a probe to use for triggering by clicking on it. For this example we will use channel 3, the triangle wave.

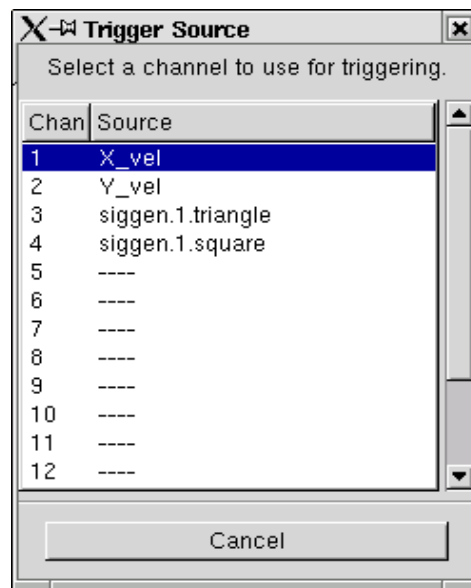


Figure 7.8: Trigger Source Dialog

After setting the trigger source, you can adjust the trigger level and trigger position using the sliders in the “Trigger” box along the right edge. The level can be adjusted from the top to the bottom of the screen, and is displayed below the sliders. The position is the location of the trigger point within the overall record. With the slider all the way down, the trigger point is at the end of the record, and halscope displays what happened before the trigger point. When the slider is all the way up, the trigger point is at the beginning of the record, displaying what happened after it was triggered. The trigger point is visible as a vertical line in the progress box above the screen. The trigger polarity can be changed by clicking the button just below the trigger level display. Note that changing the trigger position stops the scope, once the position is adjusted you restart the scope by clicking the “Normal” button in the “Run Mode” box.

Now that we have adjusted the vertical controls and triggering, the scope display looks something like figure 7.9.

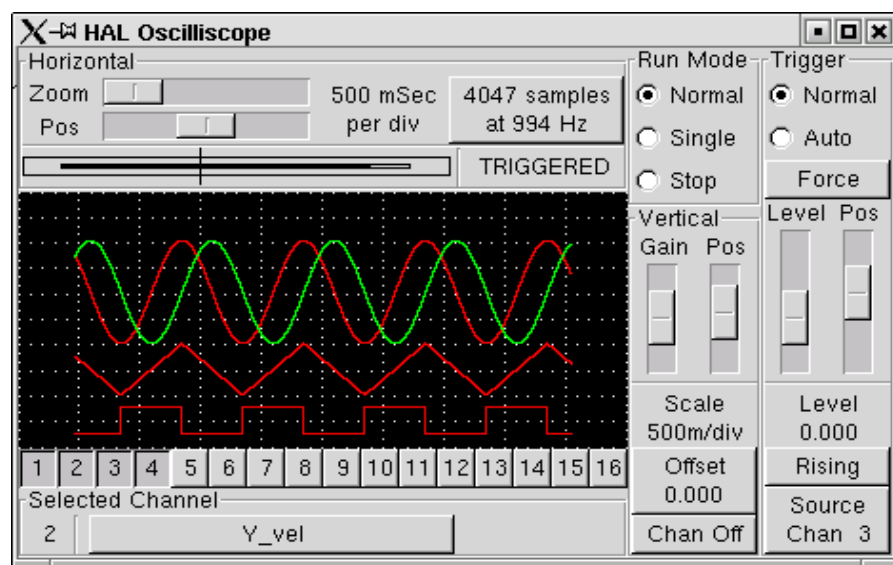


Figure 7.9: Waveforms with Triggering

7.6.6 Horizontal Adjustments

To look closely at part of a waveform, you can use the zoom slider at the top of the screen to expand the waveforms horizontally, and the position slider to determine which part of the zoomed waveform is visible. However, sometimes simply expanding the waveforms isn't enough and you need to increase the sampling rate. For example, we would like to look at the actual step pulses that are being generated in our example. Since the step pulses may be only 50uS long, sampling at 1KHz isn't fast enough. To change the sample rate, click on the button that displays the record length and sample rate to bring up the "Select Sample Rate" dialog, figure . For this example, we will click on the 50uS thread, "fast", which gives us a sample rate of about 20KHz. Now instead of displaying about 4 seconds worth of data, one record is 4000 samples at 20KHz, or about 0.20 seconds.

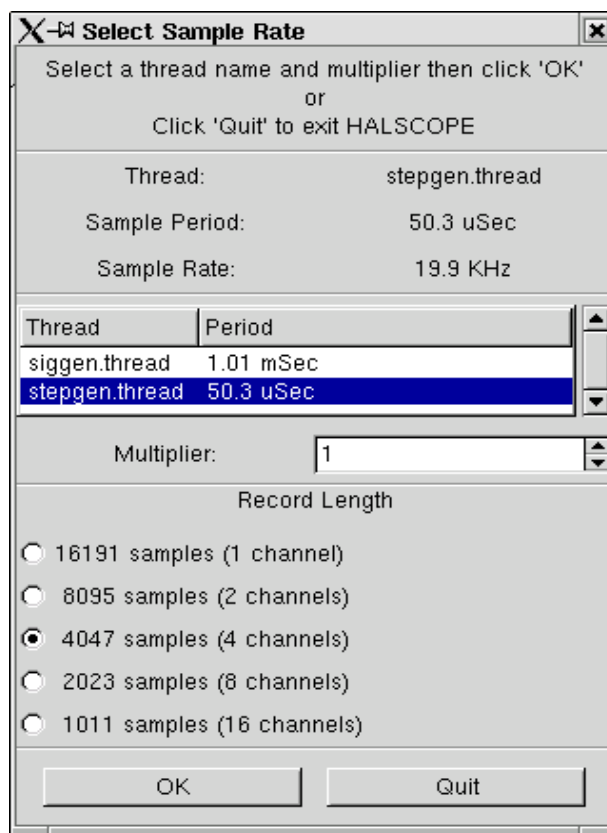


Figure 7.10: Sample Rate Dialog

7.6.7 More Channels

Now let's look at the step pulses. Halscope has 16 channels, but for this example we are using only 4 at a time. Before we select any more channels, we need to turn off a couple. Click on the channel 2 button, then click the "Off" button at the bottom of the "Vertical" box. Then click on channel 3, turn it off, and do the same for channel 4. Even though the channels are turned off, they still remember what they are connected to, and in fact we will continue to use channel 3 as the trigger source. To add new channels, select channel 5, and choose pin "stepgen.1.dir", then channel 6, and select "stepgen.1.step". Then click run mode "Normal" to start the scope, and adjust the horizontal zoom to 5mS per division. You should see the step pulses slow down as the velocity command (channel 1) approaches zero, then the direction pin changes state and the step pulses speed up again. You might want to increase the gain on channel 1 to about 20m per division to better see the change in the velocity command. The result should look like figure 7.11.

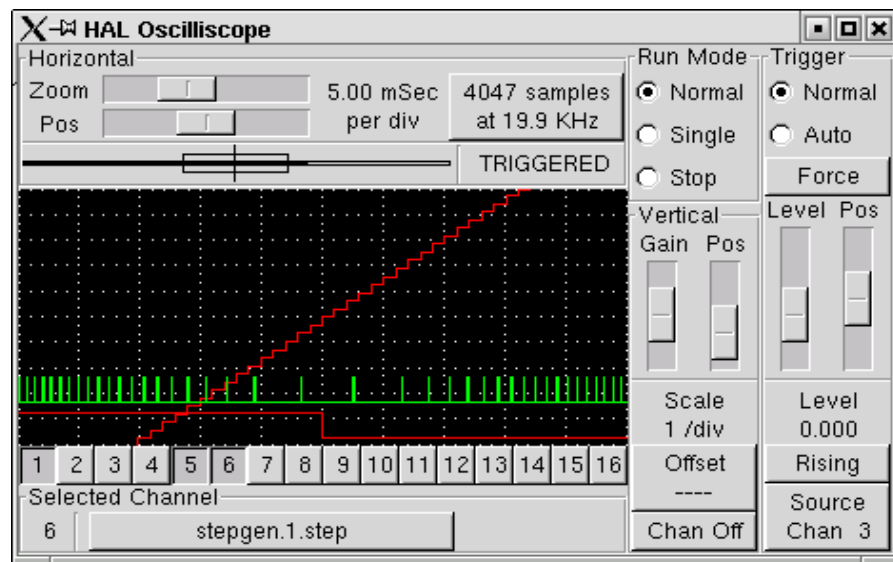


Figure 7.11: Looking at Step Pulses

7.6.8 More samples

If you want to record more samples at once, restart realtime and load halscope with a numeric argument which indicates the number of samples you want to capture, such as

```
halcmd: loadusr halscope 80000
```

if the `scope_rt` component was not already loaded, halscope will load it and request 80000 total samples, so that when sampling 4 channels at a time there will be 20000 samples per channel. (If `scope_rt` was already loaded, the numeric argument to halscope will have no effect)

Chapter 8

Hardware Drivers

8.1 Parport

Parport is a driver for the traditional PC parallel port. The port has a total of 17 physical pins. The original parallel port divided those pins into three groups: data, control, and status. The data group consists of 8 output pins, the control group consists of 4 pins, and the status group consists of 5 input pins.

In the early 1990's, the bidirectional parallel port was introduced, which allows the data group to be used for output or input. The HAL driver supports the bidirectional port, and allows the user to set the data group as either input or output. If configured as output, a port provides a total of 12 outputs and 5 inputs. If configured as input, it provides 4 outputs and 13 inputs.

In some parallel ports, the control group pins are open collectors, which may also be driven low by an external gate. On a board with open collector control pins, the "x" mode allows a more flexible mode with 8 dedicated outputs, 5 dedicated inputs, and 4 open collector pins. In other parallel ports, the control group has push-pull drivers and cannot be used as an input.¹

No other combinations are supported, and a port cannot be changed from input to output once the driver is installed. Figure 8.1 shows two block diagrams, one showing the driver when the data group is configured for output, and one showing it configured for input.

The parport driver can control up to 8 ports (defined by MAX_PORTS in hal_parport.c). The ports are numbered starting at zero.

8.1.1 Installing

```
loadrt hal_parport cfg="<config-string>"
```

The config string consists of a hex port address, followed by an optional direction, repeated for each port. The direction is "in", "out", or "x" and determines the direction of the physical pins 2 through 9, and whether to create input HAL pins for the physical control pins. If the direction is not specified, the data group defaults to output. For example:

¹HAL cannot automatically determine if the "x" mode bidirectional pins are actually open collectors (OC). If they are not, they cannot be used as inputs, and attempting to drive them LOW from an external source can damage the hardware.

To determine whether your port has "open collector" pins, load hal_parport in "x" mode, output a HIGH value on the pin. HAL should read the pin as TRUE. Next, insert a 470Ω resistor from one of the control pins to GND. If the resulting voltage on the control pin is close to 0V, and HAL now reads the pin as FALSE, then you have an OC port. If the resulting voltage is far from 0V, or HAL does not read the pin as FALSE, then your port cannot be used in "x" mode.

The external hardware that drives the control pins should also use open collector gates (e.g., 74LS05). Generally, the -out HAL pins should be set to TRUE when the physical pin is being used as an input.

On some machines, BIOS settings may affect whether "x" mode can be used. "SPP" mode is most most likely to work.

```
loadrt hal_parport cfg="0x278 0x378 in 0x20A0 out"
```

This example installs drivers for one port at 0x0278, with pins 2-9 as outputs (by default, since neither “in” nor “out” was specified), one at 0x0378, with pins 2-9 as inputs, and one at 0x20A0, with pins 2-9 explicitly specified as outputs. Note that you must know the base address of the parallel port to properly configure the driver. For ISA bus ports, this is usually not a problem, since the port is almost always at a “well known” address, like 0278 or 0378 which is typically configured in the system BIOS. The address for a PCI card is usually shown in “lspci -v” in an “I/O ports” line, or in the kernel message log after executing “sudo modprobe -a parport_pc”. There is no default address; if <config-string> does not contain at least one address, it is an error.

8.1.2 Pins

- (BIT) `parport.<portnum>.pin-<pinnum>-out` – Drives a physical output pin.
- (BIT) `parport.<portnum>.pin-<pinnum>-in` – Tracks a physical input pin.
- (BIT) `parport.<portnum>.pin-<pinnum>-in-not` – Tracks a physical input pin, but inverted.

For each pin, <portnum> is the port number, and <pinnum> is the physical pin number in the 25 pin D-shell connector.

For each physical output pin, the driver creates a single HAL pin, for example `parport.0.pin-14-out`. Pins 2 through 9 are part of the data group and are output pins if the port is defined as an output port. (Output is the default.) Pins 1, 14, 16, and 17 are outputs in all modes. These HAL pins control the state of the corresponding physical pins.

For each physical input pin, the driver creates two HAL pins, for example `parport.0.pin-12-in` and `parport.0.pin-12-in-not`. Pins 10, 11, 12, 13, and 15 are always input pins. Pins 2 through 9 are input pins only if the port is defined as an input port. The `-in` HAL pin is TRUE if the physical pin is high, and FALSE if the physical pin is low. The `-in-not` HAL pin is inverted – it is FALSE if the physical pin is high. By connecting a signal to one or the other, the user can determine the state of the input. In “x” mode, pins 1, 14, 16, and 17 are also input pins.

8.1.3 Parameters

- (BIT) `parport.<portnum>.pin-<pinnum>-out-invert` – Inverts an output pin.
- (BIT) `parport.<portnum>.pin-<pinnum>-out-reset` (only for pins 2..9) – TRUE if this pin should be reset when the `-reset` function is executed.
- (U32) `parport.<portnum>.reset-time` – The time (in nanoseconds) between a pin is set by write and reset by reset HAL functions.

The `-invert` parameter determines whether an output pin is active high or active low. If `-invert` is FALSE, setting the HAL `-out` pin TRUE drives the physical pin high, and FALSE drives it low. If `-invert` is TRUE, then setting the HAL `-out` pin TRUE will drive the physical pin low.

If `-reset` is TRUE, then the `reset` function will set the pin to the value of `-out-invert`. This can be used in conjunction with `stepgen`’s `doublefreq` to produce one step per period.

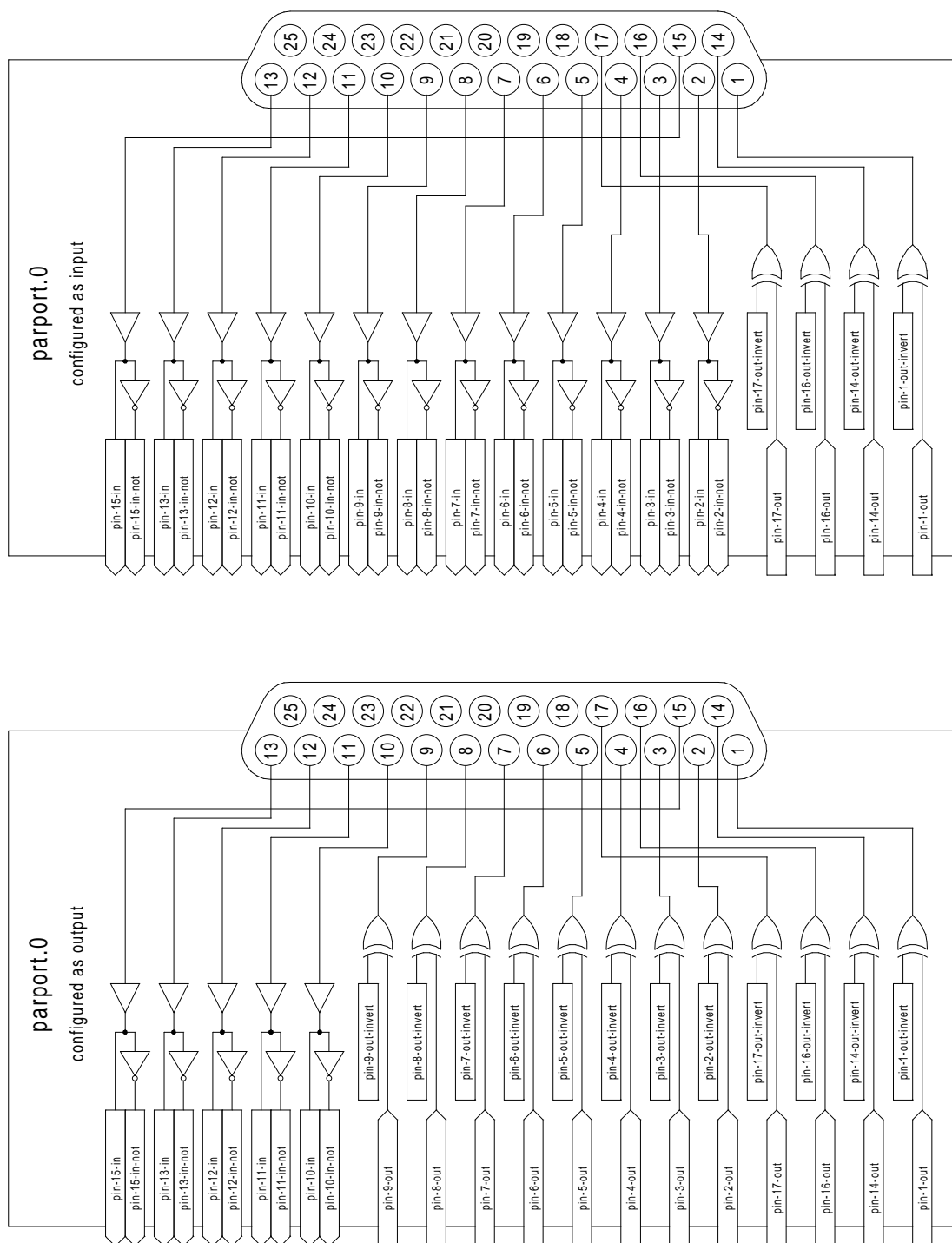


Figure 8.1: Parport Block Diagram

8.1.4 Functions

- (FUNCT) `parport.<portnum>.read` – Reads physical input pins of port `<portnum>` and updates HAL `-in` and `-in-not` pins.
- (FUNCT) `parport.read-all` – Reads physical input pins of all ports and updates HAL `-in` and `-in-not` pins.
- (FUNCT) `parport.<portnum>.write` – Reads HAL `-out` pins of port `<portnum>` and updates that port's physical output pins.
- (FUNCT) `parport.write-all` – Reads HAL `-out` pins of all ports and updates all physical output pins.
- (FUNCT) `parport.<portnum>.reset` – Waits until `reset-time` has elapsed since the associated write, then resets pins to values indicated by `-out-invert` and `-out-invert` settings. `reset` must be later in the same thread as `write`

The individual functions are provided for situations where one port needs to be updated in a very fast thread, but other ports can be updated in a slower thread to save CPU time. It is probably not a good idea to use both an `-all` function and an individual function at the same time.

8.1.5 Common problems

If loading the module reports

```
insmod: error inserting '/home/jepler/emc2/rtlib/hal_parport.ko':
-1 Device or resource busy
```

then ensure that the standard kernel module `parport_pc` is not loaded² and that no other device in the system has claimed the I/O ports.

If the module loads but does not appear to function, then the port address is incorrect or the `probe_parport` module is required.

8.2 probe_parport

In modern PCs, the parallel port may require plug and play (PNP) configuration before it can be used. The `probe_parport` module performs configuration of any PNP ports present, and should be loaded before `hal_parport`. On machines without PNP ports, it may be loaded but has no effect.

8.2.1 Installing

```
loadrt probe_parport
loadrt hal_parport ...
```

If the Linux kernel prints a message similar to

```
parport: PnPBIOS parport detected.
```

when the `parport_pc` module is loaded (`sudo modprobe -a parport_pc; sudo rmmod parport_pc`) then use of this module is probably required.

²In the emc packages for Ubuntu, the file `/etc/modprobe.d/emc2` generally prevents `parport_pc` from being automatically loaded.

8.3 AX5214H

The Axiom Measurement & Control AX5214H is a 48 channel digital I/O board. It plugs into an ISA bus, and resembles a pair of 8255 chips.³

8.3.1 Installing

```
loadrt hal_ax5214h cfg="<config-string>"
```

The config string consists of a hex port address, followed by an 8 character string of “I” and “O” which sets groups of pins as inputs and outputs. The first two character set the direction of the first two 8 bit blocks of pins (0-7 and 8-15). The next two set blocks of 4 pins (16-19 and 20-23). The pattern then repeats, two more blocks of 8 bits (24-31 and 32-39) and two blocks of 4 bits (40-43 and 44-47). If more than one board is installed, the data for the second board follows the first. As an example, the string "0x220 IIIIOIIIOO 0x300 OIOOIIOIO" installs drivers for two boards. The first board is at address 0x220, and has 36 inputs (0-19 and 24-39) and 12 outputs (20-23 and 40-47). The second board is at address 0x300, and has 20 inputs (8-15, 24-31, and 40-43) and 28 outputs (0-7, 16-23, 32-39, and 44-47). Up to 8 boards may be used in one system.

8.3.2 Pins

- (BIT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.out-<pinnum>` – Drives a physical output pin.
- (BIT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.in-<pinnum>` – Tracks a physical input pin.
- (BIT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.in-<pinnum>-not` – Tracks a physical input pin, inverted.

For each pin, `<boardnum>` is the board number (starts at zero), and `<pinnum>` is the I/O channel number (0 to 47).

Note that the driver assumes active LOW signals. This is so that modules such as OPTO-22 will work correctly (TRUE means output ON, or input energized). If the signals are being used directly without buffering or isolation the inversion needs to be accounted for. The `in-` HAL pin is TRUE if the physical pin is low (OPTO-22 module energized), and FALSE if the physical pin is high (OPTO-22 module off). The `in-<pinnum>-not` HAL pin is inverted – it is FALSE if the physical pin is low (OPTO-22 module energized). By connecting a signal to one or the other, the user can determine the state of the input.

8.3.3 Parameters

- (BIT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.out-<pinnum>-invert` – Inverts an output pin.

The `-invert` parameter determines whether an output pin is active high or active low. If `-invert` is FALSE, setting the HAL `out-` pin TRUE drives the physical pin low, turning ON an attached OPTO-22 module, and FALSE drives it high, turning OFF the OPTO-22 module. If `-invert` is TRUE, then setting the HAL `out-` pin TRUE will drive the physical pin high and turn the module OFF.

8.3.4 Functions

- (FUNCT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.read` – Reads all digital inputs on one board.
- (FUNCT) `ax5214.<boardnum>.write` – Writes all digital outputs on one board.

³In fact it may be a pair of 8255 chips, but I'm not sure. If/when someone starts a driver for an 8255 they should look at the ax5214 code, much of the work is already done.

8.4 Servo-To-Go

The Servo-To-Go is one of the first PC motion control cards⁴ supported by EMC. It is an ISA card and it exists in different flavours (all supported by this driver). The board includes up to 8 channels of quadrature encoder input, 8 channels of analog input and output, 32 bits digital I/O, an interval timer with interrupt and a watchdog.

8.4.1 Installing:

```
loadrt hal_stg [base=<address>] [num_chan=<nr>] [dio="<dio-string>"] [model=<model>]
```

The base address field is optional; if it's not provided the driver attempts to autodetect the board. The num_chan field is used to specify the number of channels available on the card, if not used the 8 axis version is assumed. The digital inputs/outputs configuration is determined by a config string passed to insmod when loading the module. The format consists of a four character string that sets the direction of each group of pins. Each character of the direction string is either "I" or "O". The first character sets the direction of port A (Port A - DIO.0-7), the next sets port B (Port B - DIO.8-15), the next sets port C (Port C - DIO.16-23), and the fourth sets port D (Port D - DIO.24-31). The model field can be used in case the driver doesn't autodetect the right card version⁵. For example:

```
loadrt hal_stg base=0x300 num_chan=4 dio="IOIO"
```

This example installs the stg driver for a card found at the base address of 0x300, 4 channels of encoder feedback, DAC's and ADC's, along with 32 bits of I/O configured like this: the first 8 (Port A) configured as Input, the next 8 (Port B) configured as Output, the next 8 (Port C) configured as Input, and the last 8 (Port D) configured as Output

```
loadrt hal_stg
```

This example installs the driver and attempts to autodetect the board address and board model, it installs 8 axes by default along with a standard I/O setup: Port A & B configured as Input, Port C & D configured as Output.

8.4.2 Pins

- (s32) stg.<channel>.counts – Tracks the counted encoder ticks.
- (FLOAT) stg.<channel>.position – Outputs a converted position.
- (FLOAT) stg.<channel>.dac-value – Drives the voltage for the corresponding DAC.
- (FLOAT) stg.<channel>.adc-value – Tracks the measured voltage from the corresponding ADC.
- (BIT) stg.in-<pinnum> – Tracks a physical input pin.
- (BIT) stg.in-<pinnum>-not – Tracks a physical input pin, but inverted.
- (BIT) stg.out-<pinnum> – Drives a physical output pin

⁴a motion control card usually is a board containing devices to control one or more axes (the control devices are usually DAC's to set an analog voltage, encoder counting chips for feedback, etc.)

⁵hint: after starting up the driver, 'dmesg' can be consulted for messages relevant to the driver (e.g. autodetected version number and base address)

For each pin, `<channel>` is the axis number, and `<pinnum>` is the logic pin number of the STG⁶.

The `in- HAL` pin is `TRUE` if the physical pin is high, and `FALSE` if the physical pin is low. The `in-<pinnum>-not HAL` pin is inverted – it is `FALSE` if the physical pin is high. By connecting a signal to one or the other, the user can determine the state of the input.

8.4.3 Parameters

- (FLOAT) `stg.<channel>.position-scale` – The number of counts / user unit (to convert from counts to units).
- (FLOAT) `stg.<channel>.dac-offset` – Sets the offset for the corresponding DAC.
- (FLOAT) `stg.<channel>.dac-gain` – Sets the gain of the corresponding DAC.
- (FLOAT) `stg.<channel>.adc-offset` – Sets the offset of the corresponding ADC.
- (FLOAT) `stg.<channel>.adc-gain` – Sets the gain of the corresponding ADC.
- (BIT) `stg.out-<pinnum>-invert` – Inverts an output pin.

The `-invert` parameter determines whether an output pin is active high or active low. If `-invert` is `FALSE`, setting the `HAL out- pin` `TRUE` drives the physical pin high, and `FALSE` drives it low. If `-invert` is `TRUE`, then setting the `HAL out- pin` `TRUE` will drive the physical pin low.

8.4.4 Functions

- (FUNCT) `stg.capture-position` – Reads the encoder counters from the axis `<channel>`.
- (FUNCT) `stg.write-dacs` – Writes the voltages to the DACs.
- (FUNCT) `stg.read-adcs` – Reads the voltages from the ADCs.
- (FUNCT) `stg.di-read` – Reads physical `in- pins` of all ports and updates all `HAL in- and in-<pinnum>-not pins`.
- (FUNCT) `stg.do-write` – Reads all `HAL out- pins` and updates all physical output pins.

8.5 Mesa Electronics m5i20 “Anything I/O Card”

The Mesa Electronics m5i20 card consists of an FPGA that can be loaded with a wide variety of configurations, and has 72 pins that leave the PC. The assignment of the pins depends on the FPGA configuration. Currently there is a HAL driver for the “4 axis host based motion control” configuration, and this FPGA configurations is also provided with EMC2. It provides 8 encoder counters, 4 PWM outputs (normally used as DACs) and up to 48 digital I/O channels, 32 inputs and 16 outputs.⁷

Installing:

```
loadrt hal_m5i20 [loadFpga=1|0] [dacRate=<rate>]
```

If `loadFpga` is 1 (the default) the driver will load the FPGA configuration on startup. If it is 0, the driver assumes the configuration is already loaded. `dacRate` sets the carrier frequency for the PWM outputs, in Hz. The default is 32000, for 32KHz PWM. Valid values are from 1 to 32226. The driver prints some useful debugging message to the kernel log, which can be viewed with `dmesg`.

Up to 4 boards may be used in one system.

⁶if IIOO is defined, there are 16 input pins (`in-00 .. in-15`) and 16 output pins (`out-00 .. out-15`), and they correspond to PORTs ABCD (`in-00` is `PORTA.0`, `out-15` is `PORTD.7`)

⁷Ideally the encoders, “DACs”, and digital I/O would comply with the canonical interfaces defined earlier, but they don't. Fixing that is on the things-to-do list.

8.5.1 Pins

In the following pins, parameters, and functions, `<board>` is the board ID. According to the naming conventions the first board should always have an ID of zero, however this driver uses the PCI board ID, so it may be non-zero even if there is only one board.

- (s32) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-count` – Encoder position, in counts.
- (FLOAT) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-position` – Encoder position, in user units.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-index` – Current status of index pulse input?
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-index-enable` – when TRUE, and an index pulse appears on the encoder input, reset counter to zero and clear `index-enable`.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-reset` – When true, counter is forced to zero.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-<channel>-enable` – Enables DAC if true. DAC outputs zero volts if false?
- (FLOAT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-<channel>-value` – Analog output value for PWM “DAC” (in user units, see `-scale` and `-offset`)
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.in-<channel>` – State of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.in-<channel>-not` – Inverted state of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.out-<channel>` – Value to be written to digital output, see canonical digital output.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.estop-in` – Dedicated estop input, more details needed.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.estop-in-not` – Inverted state of dedicated estop input.
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.watchdog-reset` – Bidirectional, - Set TRUE to reset watchdog once, is automatically cleared. If bit value 16 is set in `watchdog-control` then this value is not used, and the hardware watchdog is cleared every time the `dac-write` function is executed.

8.5.2 Parameters

- (FLOAT) `m5i20.<board>.enc-<channel>-scale` – The number of counts / user unit (to convert from counts to units).
- (FLOAT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-<channel>-offset` – Sets the DAC offset.
- (FLOAT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-<channel>-gain` – Sets the DAC gain (scaling).
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-<channel>-interlaced` – Sets the DAC to interlaced mode. Use this mode if you are filtering the PWM to generate an analog voltage.⁸
- (BIT) `m5i20.<board>.out-<channel>-invert` – Inverts a digital output, see canonical digital output.

⁸With normal 10 bit PWM, 50% duty cycle would be 512 cycles on and 512 cycles off = ca 30 kHz with 33 MHz reference counter. With fully interleaved PWM this would be 1 cycle on, 1 cycle off for 1024 cycles (16.66 MHz if the PWM reference counter runs at 33 MHz) = much easier to filter. The 5I20 configuration interlace is somewhat between non and fully interlaced (to make it easy to filter but not have as many transistions as fully interleaved).

- (u32) `m5i20.<board>.watchdog-control` – Configures the watchdog. The value may be a bitwise OR of the following values:

Bit #	Value	Meaning
0	1	Watchdog is enabled
1	2	Watchdog is automatically reset by DAC writes (the HAL <code>dac-write</code> function)

Typically, the useful values are 0 (watchdog disabled) or 3 (watchdog enabled, cleared by `dac-write`).

- (u32) `m5i20.<board>.led-view` – Maps some of the I/O to onboard LEDs. See table below.

8.5.3 Functions

- (FUNCT) `m5i20.<board>.encoder-read` – Reads all encoder counters.
- (FUNCT) `m5i20.<board>.digital-in-read` – Reads digital inputs.
- (FUNCT) `m5i20.<board>.dac-write` – Writes the voltages (PWM duty cycles) to the “DACs”.
- (FUNCT) `m5i20.<board>.digital-out-write` – Writes digital outputs.
- (FUNCT) `m5i20.<board>.misc-update` – Writes watchdog timer configuration to hardware. Resets watchdog timer. Updates E-stop pin (more info needed). Updates onboard LEDs.

8.5.4 Connector pinout

The Hostmot-4 FPGA configuration has the following pinout. There are three 50-pin ribbon cable connectors on the card: P2, P3, and P4. There are also 8 status LEDs.

8.5.4.1 Connector P2

m5i20 card connector P2	Function/HAL-pin
1	enc-01 A input
3	enc-01 B input
5	enc-00 A input
7	enc-00 B input
9	enc-01 index input
11	enc-00 index input
13	dac-01 output
15	dac-00 output
17	DIR output for dac-01
19	DIR output for dac-00
21	dac-01-enable output
23	dac-00-enable output
25	enc-03 B input
27	enc-03 A input
29	enc-02 B input
31	enc-02 A input
33	enc-03 index input
35	enc-02 index input
37	dac-03 output
39	dac-02 output
41	DIR output for dac-03
43	DIR output for dac-02
45	dac-03-enable output
47	dac-02-enable output
49	Power +5 V (or +3.3V ?)
all even pins	Ground

8.5.4.2 Connector P3

Encoder counters 4 - 7 work simultaneously with in-00 to in-11.

If you are using in-00 to in-11 as general purpose IO then reading enc-<4-7> will produce some random junk number.

m5i20 card connector P3	Function/HAL-pin	Secondary Function/HAL-pin
1	in-00	enc-04 A input
3	in-01	enc-04 B input
5	in-02	enc-04 index input
7	in-03	enc-05 A input
9	in-04	enc-05 B input
11	in-05	enc-05 index input
13	in-06	enc-06 A input
15	in-07	enc-06 B input
17	in-08	enc-06 index input
19	in-09	enc-07 A input
21	in-10	enc-07 B input
23	in-11	enc-07 index input
25	in-12	
27	in-13	
29	in-14	
31	in-15	
33	out-00	
35	out-01	
37	out-02	
39	out-03	
41	out-04	
43	out-05	
45	out-06	
47	out-07	
49	Power +5 V (or +3.3V ?)	
all even pins	Ground	

8.5.4.3 Connector P4

The index mask masks the index input of the encoder so that the encoder index can be combined with a mechanical switch or opto detector to clear or latch the encoder counter only when the mask input bit is in proper state (selected by mask polarity bit) and encoder index occurs. This is useful for homing. The behaviour of these pins is controlled by the Counter Control Register (CCR), however there is currently no function in the driver to change the CCR. See REGMAP4⁹ for a description of the CCR.

⁹[emc2/src/hal/drivers/m5i20/REGMAP4E](#)

m5i20 card connector P4	Function/HAL-pin	Secondary Function/HAL-pin
1	in-16	enc-00 index mask
3	in-17	enc-01 index mask
5	in-18	enc-02 index mask
7	in-19	enc-03 index mask
9	in-20	
11	in-21	
13	in-22	
15	in-23	
17	in-24	enc-04 index mask
19	in-25	enc-05 index mask
21	in-26	enc-06 index mask
23	in-27	enc-07 index mask
25	in-28	
27	in-29	
29	in-30	
31	in-31	
33	out-08	
35	out-09	
37	out-10	
39	out-11	
41	out-12	
43	out-13	
45	out-14	
47	out-15	
49	Power +5 V (or +3.3V ?)	
all even pins	Ground	

8.5.4.4 LEDs

The status LEDs will monitor one motion channel set by the `m5i20.<board>.led-view` parameter. A call to `m5i20.<board>.misc-update` is required to update the viewed channel.

LED name	Output
LED0	IRQLatch ?
LED1	enc-<channel> A
LED2	enc-<channel> B
LED3	enc-<channel> index
LED4	dac-<channel> DIR
LED5	dac-<channel>
LED6	dac-<channel>-enable
LED7	watchdog timeout ?

8.6 Vital Systems Motenc-100 and Motenc-LITE

The Vital Systems Motenc-100 and Motenc-LITE are 8- and 4-channel servo control boards. The Motenc-100 provides 8 quadrature encoder counters, 8 analog inputs, 8 analog outputs, 64 (68?) digital inputs, and 32 digital outputs. The Motenc-LITE has only 4 encoder counters, 32 digital inputs and 16 digital outputs, but it still has 8 analog inputs and 8 analog outputs. The driver automatically identifies the installed board and exports the appropriate HAL objects.¹⁰

Installing:

¹⁰Ideally the encoders, DACs, ADCs, and digital I/O would comply with the canonical interfaces defined earlier, but they don't. Fixing that is on the things-to-do list.

```
loadrt hal_motenc
```

During loading (or attempted loading) the driver prints some usefull debugging message to the kernel log, which can be viewed with **dmesg**.

Up to 4 boards may be used in one system.

8.6.1 Pins

In the following pins, parameters, and functions, `<board>` is the board ID. According to the naming conventions the first board should always have an ID of zero. However this driver sets the ID based on a pair of jumpers on the baord, so it may be non-zero even if there is only one board.

- (s32) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-count` – Encoder position, in counts.
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-position` – Encoder position, in user units.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-index` – Current status of index pulse input.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-idx-latch` – Driver sets this pin true when it latches an index pulse (enabled by `latch-index`). Cleared by clearing `latch-index`.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-latch-index` – If this pin is true, the driver will reset the counter on the next index pulse.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-reset-count` – If this pin is true, the counter will immediately be reset to zero, and the pin will be cleared.
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.dac-<channel>-value` – Analog output value for DAC (in user units, see `-gain` and `-offset`)
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.adc-<channel>-value` – Analog input value read by ADC (in user units, see `-gain` and `-offset`)
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.in-<channel>` – State of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.in-<channel>-not` – Inverted state of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.out-<channel>` – Value to be written to digital output, seen canonical digital output.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.estop-in` – Dedicated estop input, more details needed.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.estop-in-not` – Inverted state of dedicated estop input.
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.watchdog-reset` – Bidirectional, - Set TRUE to reset watchdog once, is automatically cleared.

8.6.2 Parameters

- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.enc-<channel>-scale` – The number of counts / user unit (to convert from counts to units).
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.dac-<channel>-offset` – Sets the DAC offset.
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.dac-<channel>-gain` – Sets the DAC gain (scaling).
- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.adc-<channel>-offset` – Sets the ADC offset.

- (FLOAT) `motenc.<board>.adc-<channel>-gain` – Sets the ADC gain (scaling).
- (BIT) `motenc.<board>.out-<channel>-invert` – Inverts a digital output, see canonical digital output.
- (U32) `motenc.<board>.watchdog-control` – Configures the watchdog. The value may be a bitwise OR of the following values:

Bit #	Value	Meaning
0	1	Timeout is 16ms if set, 8ms if unset
2	4	Watchdog is enabled
4	16	Watchdog is automatically reset by DAC writes (the HAL <code>dac-write</code> function)

Typically, the useful values are 0 (watchdog disabled) or 20 (8ms watchdog enabled, cleared by `dac-write`).

- (U32) `motenc.<board>.led-view` – Maps some of the I/O to onboard LEDs?

8.6.3 Functions

- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.encoder-read` – Reads all encoder counters.
- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.adc-read` – Reads the analog-to-digital converters.
- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.digital-in-read` – Reads digital inputs.
- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.dac-write` – Writes the voltages to the DACs.
- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.digital-out-write` – Writes digital outputs.
- (FUNCT) `motenc.<board>.misc-update` – Updates misc stuff.

8.7 Pico Systems PPMC (Parallel Port Motion Control)

Pico Systems has a family of boards for doing servo, stepper, and pwm control. The boards connect to the PC through a parallel port working in EPP mode. Although most users connect one board to a parallel port, in theory any mix of up to 8 or 16 boards can be used on a single parport. One driver serves all types of boards. The final mix of I/O depends on the connected board(s). The driver doesn't distinguish between boards, it simply numbers I/O channels (encoders, etc) starting from 0 on the first card.

Installing:

```
loadrt hal_ppmc port_addr=<addr1>[,<addr2>[,<addr3>...]]
```

The `port_addr` parameter tells the driver what parallel port(s) to check. By default, `<addr1>` is 0x0378, and `<addr2>` and following are not used. The driver searches the entire address space of the enhanced parallel port(s) at `port_addr`, looking for any board(s) in the PPMC family. It then exports HAL pins for whatever it finds. During loading (or attempted loading) the driver prints some usefull debugging message to the kernel log, which can be viewed with `dmesg`.

Up to 3 parport busses may be used, and each bus may have up to 8 devices on it.

8.7.1 Pins

In the following pins, parameters, and functions, `<board>` is the board ID. According to the naming conventions the first board should always have an ID of zero. However this driver sets the ID based on a pair of jumpers on the board, so it may be non-zero even if there is only one board.

- (s32) `ppmc.<port>.encoder.<channel>.count` – Encoder position, in counts.
- (s32) `ppmc.<port>.encoder.<channel>.delta` – Change in counts since last read.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.encoder.<channel>.position` – Encoder position, in user units.
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.encoder.<channel>.index` – Something to do with index pulse.¹¹
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.enable` – Enables a PWM generator.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.value` – Value which determines the duty cycle of the PWM waveforms. The value is divided by `pwm.<channel>.scale`, and if the result is 0.6 the duty cycle will be 60%, and so on. Negative values result in the duty cycle being based on the absolute value, and the direction pin is set to indicate negative.
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel>.enable` – Enables a step pulse generator.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel>.velocity` – Value which determines the step frequency. The value is multiplied by `stepgen.<channel>.scale`, and the result is the frequency in steps per second. Negative values result in the frequency being based on the absolute value, and the direction pin is set to indicate negative.
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.in-<channel>` – State of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.in.<channel>.not` – Inverted state of digital input pin, see canonical digital input.
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.out-<channel>` – Value to be written to digital output, see canonical digital output.

8.7.2 Parameters

- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.enc.<channel>.scale` – The number of counts / user unit (to convert from counts to units).
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel-range>.freq` – The PWM carrier frequency, in Hz. Applies to a group of four consecutive PWM generators, as indicated by `<channel-range>`. Minimum is 153Hz, maximum is 500KHz.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.scale` – Scaling for PWM generator. If scale is X, then the duty cycle will be 100% when the value pin is X (or -X).
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.max-dc` – Maximum duty cycle, from 0.0 to 1.0.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.min-dc` – Minimum duty cycle, from 0.0 to 1.0.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.duty-cycle` – Actual duty cycle (used mostly for troubleshooting.)
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.pwm.<channel>.bootstrap` – If true, the PWM generator will generate a short sequence of pulses of both polarities when it is enabled, to charge the bootstrap capacitors used on some MOSFET gate drivers.

¹¹Index handling does `_not_` comply with the canonical encoder interface, and should be changed.

- (U32) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel-range>.setup-time` – Sets minimum time between direction change and step pulse, in units of 100nS. Applies to a group of four consecutive PWM generators, as indicated by `<channel-range>`.
- (U32) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel-range>.pulse-width` – Sets width of step pulses, in units of 100nS. Applies to a group of four consecutive PWM generators, as indicated by `<channel-range>`.
- (U32) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel-range>.pulse-space-min` – Sets minimum time between pulses, in units of 100nS. The maximum step rate is $1/(100\text{nS} * (\text{pulse-width} + \text{pulse-space-min}))$. Applies to a group of four consecutive PWM generators, as indicated by `<channel-range>`.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel>.scale` – Scaling for step pulse generator. The step frequency in Hz is the absolute value of `velocity * scale`.
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel>.max-vel` – The maximum value for velocity. Commands greater than `max-vel` will be clamped. Also applies to negative values. (The absolute value is clamped.)
- (FLOAT) `ppmc.<port>.stepgen.<channel>.frequency` – Actual step pulse frequency in Hz (used mostly for troubleshooting.)
- (BIT) `ppmc.<port>.out.<channel>.invert` – Inverts a digital output, see canonical digital output.

8.7.3 Functions

- (FUNCT) `ppmc.<port>.read` – Reads all inputs (digital inputs and encoder counters) on one port.
- (FUNCT) `ppmc.<port>.write` – Writes all outputs (digital outputs, stepgens, PWMs) on one port.

8.8 Pluto-P: generalities

The Pluto-P is an inexpensive (\$60) FPGA board featuring the ACEX1K chip from Altera.

8.8.1 Requirements

1. A Pluto-P board
2. An EPP-compatible parallel port, configured for EPP mode in the system BIOS

8.8.2 Connectors

- The Pluto-P board is shipped with the left connector presoldered, with the key in the indicated position. The other connectors are unpopulated. There does not seem to be a standard 12-pin IDC connector, but some of the pins of a 16P connector can hang off the board next to QA3/QZ3.
- The bottom and right connectors are on the same .1" grid, but the left connector is not. If OUT2...OUT9 are not required, a single IDC connector can span the bottom connector and the bottom two rows of the right connector.

8.8.3 Physical Pins

- Read the ACEX1K datasheet for information about input and output voltage thresholds. The pins are all configured in "LVTTTL/LVCMOS" mode and are generally compatible with 5V TTL logic.
- Before configuration and after properly exiting emc2, all Pluto-P pins are tristated with weak pull-ups (20k Ω min, 50k Ω max). If the watchdog timer is enabled (the default), these pins are also tristated after an interruption of communication between emc2 and the board. The watchdog timer takes approximately 6.5ms to activate. However, software bugs in the pluto_servo firmware or emc2 can leave the Pluto-P pins in an undefined state.
- In pwm+dir mode, by default dir is HIGH for negative values and LOW for positive values. To select HIGH for positive values and LOW for negative values, set the corresponding dout-NN-invert parameter TRUE to invert the signal.
- The index input is triggered on the rising edge. Initial testing has shown that the QZx inputs are particularly noise sensitive, due to being polled every 25ns. Digital filtering has been added to filter pulses shorter than 175ns (seven polling times). Additional external filtering on all input pins, such as a Schmitt buffer or inverter, RC filter, or differential receiver (if applicable) is recommended.
- The IN1...IN7 pins have 22-ohm series resistors to their associated FPGA pins. No other pins have any sort of protection for out-of-spec voltages or currents. It is up to the integrator to add appropriate isolation and protection. Traditional parallel port optoisolator boards do not work with pluto_servo due to the bidirectional nature of the EPP protocol.

8.8.4 LED

- When the device is unprogrammed, the LED glows faintly. When the device is programmed, the LED glows according to the duty cycle of PWM0 (**LED** = **UP0** xor **DOWN0**) or STEPGEN0 (**LED** = **STEP0** xor **DIRO**).

8.8.5 Power

- A small amount of current may be drawn from VCC. The available current depends on the unregulated DC input to the board. Alternately, regulated +3.3VDC may be supplied to the FPGA through these VCC pins. The required current is not yet known, but is probably around 50mA plus I/O current.
- The regulator on the Pluto-P board is a low-dropout type. Supplying 5V at the power jack will allow the regulator to work properly.

8.8.6 PC interface

- At present, only a single pluto_servo or pluto_step board is supported. At present there is no provision for multiple boards on one parallel port (because all boards reside at the same EPP address) but supporting one board per parallel port should be possible.

8.8.7 Rebuilding the FPGA firmware

The `src/hal/drivers/pluto_servo_firmware/` and `src/hal/drivers/pluto_step_firmware/` subdirectories contain the Verilog source code plus additional files used by Quartus for the FPGA firmwares. Altera's Quartus II software is required to rebuild the FPGA firmware. To rebuild the

firmware from the .hdl and other source files, open the .qpf file and press CTRL-L. Then, recompile emc2.

Like the HAL hardware driver, the FPGA firmware is licensed under the terms of the GNU General Public License.

The gratis version of Quartus II runs only on Microsoft Windows, although there is apparently a paid version that runs on Linux.

8.8.8 For more information

The Pluto-P board may be ordered from http://www.knjn.com/ShopBoards_Parallel.html (US based, international shipping is available). Some additional information about it is available from http://www.fpga4fun.com/board_pluto-P.html and from the developer's blog <http://emergent.unpy.net/01165081407>.

8.9 pluto-servo: Hardware PWM and quadrature counting

The pluto_servo system is suitable for control of a 4-axis CNC mill with servo motors, a 3-axis mill with PWM spindle control, a lathe with spindle encoder, etc. The large number of inputs allows a full set of limit switches.

This driver features:

- 4 quadrature channels with 40MHz sample rate. The counters operate in "4x" mode. The maximum useful quadrature rate is 8191 counts per emc2 servo cycle, or about 8MHz for EMC2's default 1ms servo rate.
- 4 PWM channels, "up/down" or "pwm+dir" style. 4095 duty cycles from -100% to +100%, including 0%. The PWM period is approximately 19.5kHz (40MHz / 2047). A PDM-like mode is also available.
- 18 digital outputs: 10 dedicated, 8 shared with PWM functions. (Example: A lathe with unidirectional PWM spindle control may use 13 total digital outputs)
- 20 digital inputs: 8 dedicated, 12 shared with Quadrature functions. (Example: A lathe with index pulse only on the spindle may use 13 total digital inputs)
- EPP communication with the PC. The EPP communication typically takes around 100uS on machines tested so far, enabling servo rates above 1kHz.

8.9.1 Pinout

UPx The "up" (up/down mode) or "pwm" (pwm+direction mode) signal from PWM generator X. May be used as a digital output if the corresponding PWM channel is unused, or the output on the channel is always negative. The corresponding digital output invert may be set to TRUE to make UPx active low rather than active high.

DNx The "down" (up/down mode) or "direction" (pwm+direction mode) signal from PWM generator X. May be used as a digital output if the corresponding PWM channel is unused, or the output on the channel is never negative. The corresponding digital output invert may be set to TRUE to make DNx active low rather than active high.

QAx, QBx The A and B signals for Quadrature counter X. May be used as a digital input if the corresponding quadrature channel is unused.

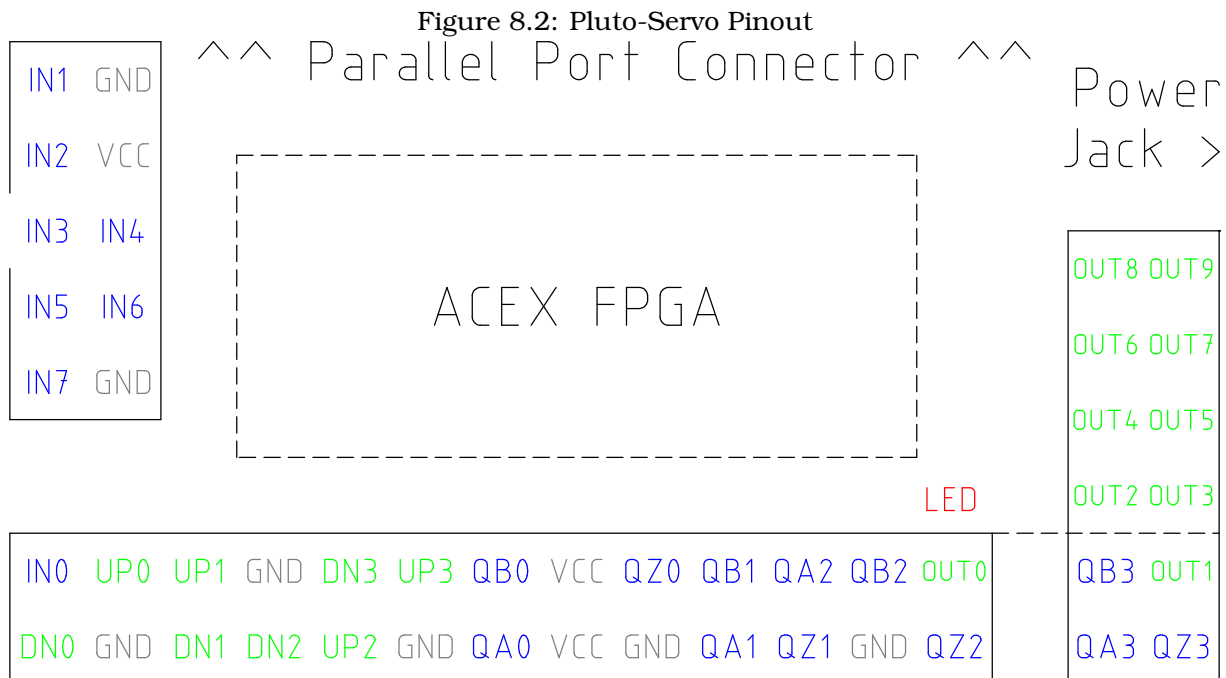
QZx The Z (index) signal for quadrature counter X. May be used as a digital input if the index feature of the corresponding quadrature channel is unused.

INx Dedicated digital input #x

OUTx Dedicated digital output #x

GND Ground

VCC +3.3V regulated DC



8.9.2 Input latching and output updating

- PWM duty cycles for each channel are updated at different times.
- Digital outputs OUT0 through OUT9 are all updated at the same time. Digital outputs OUT10 through OUT17 are updated at the same time as the pwm function they are shared with.
- Digital inputs IN0 through IN19 are all latched at the same time.
- Quadrature positions for each channel are latched at different times.

8.9.3 HAL Functions, Pins and Parameters

A list of all 'loadrt' arguments, HAL function names, pin names and parameter names is in the manual page, *pluto_servo.9*.

8.9.4 Compatible driver hardware

A schematic for a 2A, 2-axis PWM servo amplifier board is available (<http://emergent.unpy.net/projects/01148303608>). The L298 H-Bridge (L298 H-bridge <http://www.st.com/stonline/books/pdf/docs/1773.pdf>) is inexpensive and can easily be used for motors up to 4A (one motor per

Table 8.1: Pluto-Servo Alternate Pin Functions

Primary function	Alternate Function	Behavior if both functions used
UP0	PWM0	When pwm-0-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the PWM output
	OUT10	XOR'd with UP0 or PWM0
UP1	PWM1	When pwm-1-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the PWM output
	OUT12	XOR'd with UP1 or PWM1
UP2	PWM2	When pwm-2-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the PWM output
	OUT14	XOR'd with UP2 or PWM2
UP3	PWM3	When pwm-3-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the PWM output
	OUT16	XOR'd with UP3 or PWM3
DN0	DIR0	When pwm-0-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the DIR output
	OUT11	XOR'd with DN0 or DIR0
DN1	DIR1	When pwm-1-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the DIR output
	OUT13	XOR'd with DN1 or DIR1
DN2	DIR2	When pwm-2-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the DIR output
	OUT15	XOR'd with DN2 or DIR2
DN3	DIR3	When pwm-3-pwmdir is TRUE, this pin is the DIR output
	OUT17	XOR'd with DN3 or DIR3
QZ0	IN8	Read same value
QZ1	IN9	Read same value
QZ2	IN10	Read same value
QZ3	IN11	Read same value
QA0	IN12	Read same value
QA1	IN13	Read same value
QA2	IN14	Read same value
QA3	IN15	Read same value
QB0	IN16	Read same value
QB1	IN17	Read same value
QB2	IN18	Read same value
QB3	IN19	Read same value

L298) or up to 2A (two motors per L298) with the supply voltage up to 46V. However, the L298 does not have built-in current limiting, a problem for motors with high stall currents. For higher currents and voltages, some users have reported success with International Rectifier's integrated high-side/low-side drivers. (<http://www.cnczone.com/forums/showthread.php?t=25929>)

8.10 Pluto-step: 300kHz Hardware Step Generator

Pluto-step is suitable for control of a 3- or 4-axis CNC mill with stepper motors. The large number of inputs allows for a full set of limit switches.

The board features:

- 4 “step+direction” channels with 312.5kHz maximum step rate, programmable step length, space, and direction change times
- 14 dedicated digital outputs
- 16 dedicated digital inputs
- EPP communication with the PC

8.10.1 Pinout

STEP_x The “step” (clock) output of stepgen channel **x**

DIR_x The “direction” output of stepgen channel **x**

IN_x Dedicated digital input #**x**

OUT_x Dedicated digital output #**x**

GND Ground

VCC +3.3V regulated DC

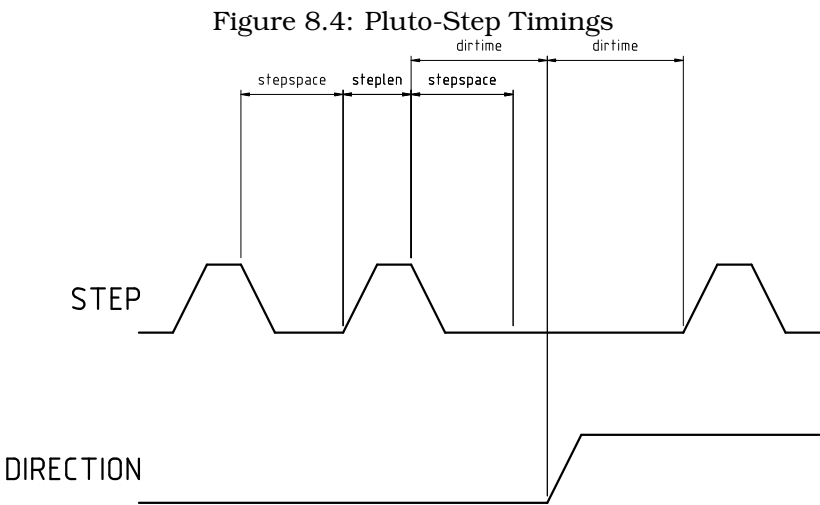
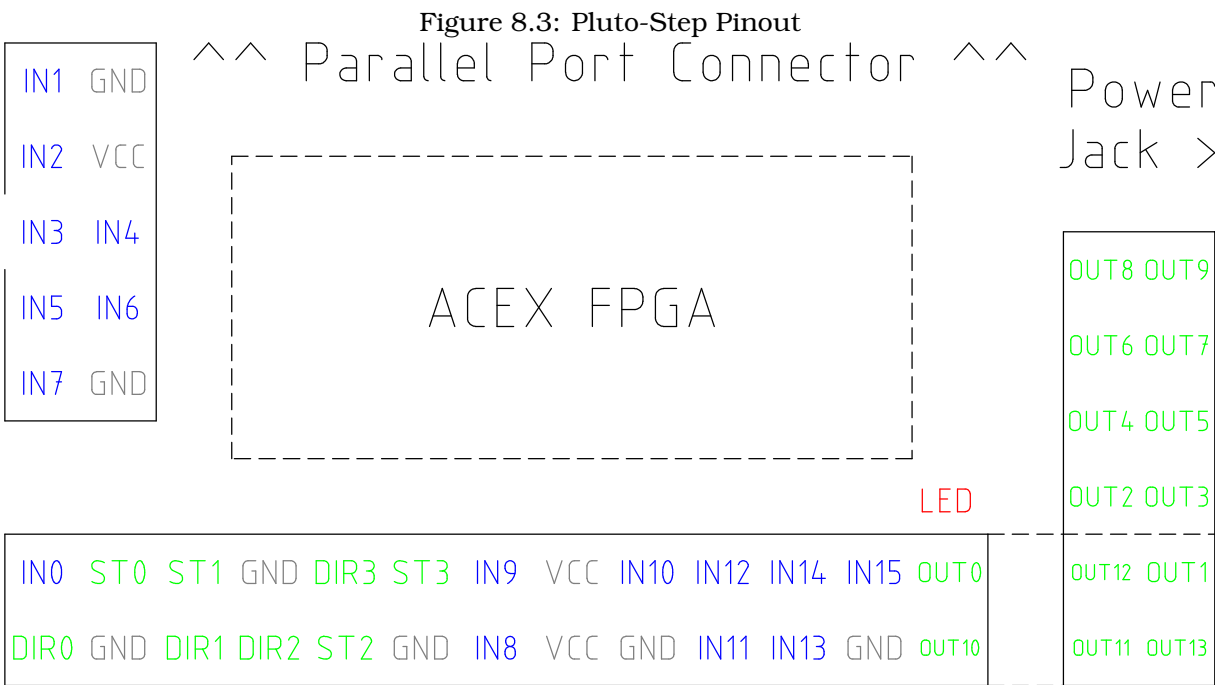
While the “extended main connector” has a superset of signals usually found on a Step & Direction DB25 connector—4 step generators, 9 inputs, and 6 general-purpose outputs—the layout on this header is different than the layout of a standard 26-pin ribbon cable to DB25 connector.

8.10.2 Input latching and output updating

- Step frequencies for each channel are updated at different times.
- Digital outputs are all updated at the same time.
- Digital inputs are all latched at the same time.
- Feedback positions for each channel are latched at different times.

8.10.3 Step Waveform Timings

The firmware and driver enforce step length, space, and direction change times. Timings are rounded up to the next multiple of $1.6\mu s$, with a maximum of $49.6\mu s$. The timings are the same as for the software stepgen component, except that “dirhold” and “dirsetup” have been merged into a single parameter “dirtime” which should be the maximum of the two, and that the same step timings are always applied to all channels.



8.10.4 HAL Functions, Pins and Parameters

A list of all 'loadrt' arguments, HAL function names, pin names and parameter names is in the manual page, *pluto_step.9*.

Part III

Using EMC2

Chapter 9

Using the AXIS Graphical Interface

9.1 Introduction

AXIS is a graphical front-end for emc2 which features a live preview and backplot. It is written in Python and uses Tk and OpenGL to display its user interface.

9.2 Getting Started

To select AXIS as the front-end for emc2, edit the .ini file. In the section [DISPLAY] change the DISPLAY line to read

```
DISPLAY = axis
```

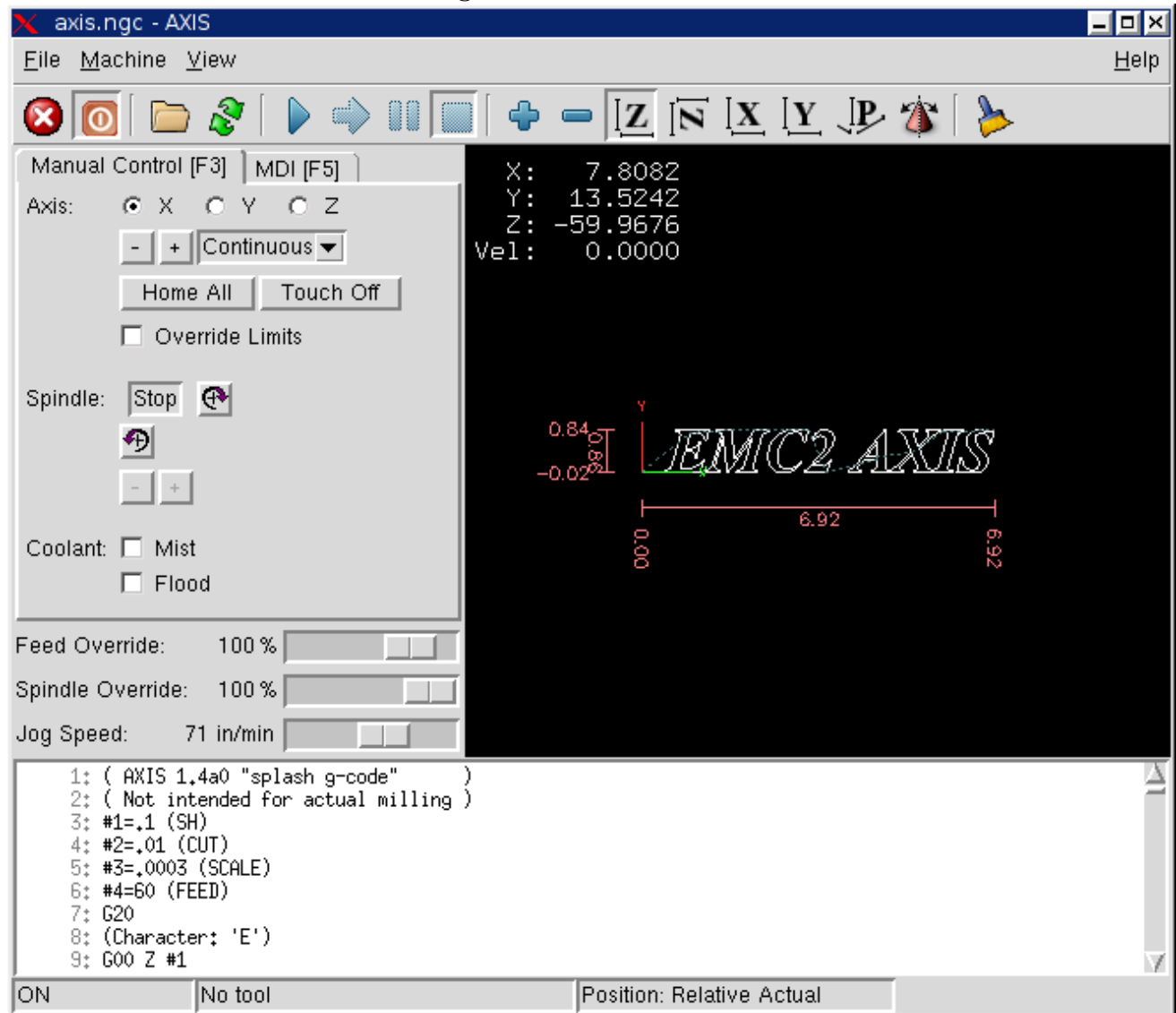
Then, start emc2 and select that ini file. The sample configuration `sim/axis.ini` is already configured to use AXIS as its front-end.

When you start AXIS, a window like the one in [Figure 9.1](#) is shown.

9.2.1 A typical session with AXIS

1. Start emc and select a configuration file.
2. Clear the “ESTOP” condition and turn the machine on.
3. “Home” all axes.
4. Load the file to be milled.
5. Use the preview plot to verify that the program is correct.
6. Put the stock to be milled on the table.
7. Set the proper offsets for each axis by jogging and using the “Touch Off” button.
8. Run the program.
9. To mill the same file again, return to step 6. To mill a different file, return to step 4. When you’re done, exit AXIS.

Figure 9.1: AXIS Window



9.3 Elements of the AXIS window

The AXIS window contains the following elements:

- A display area that shows a preview of the loaded file (in this case, “axis.ngc”), as well as the current location of the CNC machine’s “controlled point”. Later, this area will display the path the CNC machine has moved through, called the “backplot”
- A menubar and toolbar that allow you to perform various actions
- “Manual Control”, which allows you to make the machine move, turn the spindle on or off, and turn the coolant on or off
- “Code Entry” (also called MDI), where G-code programs can be entered manually, one line at a time.
- “Feed Override”, which allows you to increase or decrease the speed at which EMC executes the selected program.

- A text display area that shows the G-code source of the loaded file.
- A status bar which shows the state of the machine. In this screenshot, the machine is turned on, does not have a tool inserted, and the displayed position is “Relative” to the machine offset (as opposed to “Absolute”), and the “Actual” (as opposed to “Commanded” position)



9.3.1 Toolbar buttons


From left to right, the toolbar buttons are:

1. Toggle “Emergency Stop” (also called E-Stop)
2. Toggle machine power
3. Open a file
4. Reload the opened file
5. Run the program
6. Run the next line of the program
7. Pause the program
8. Stop the program
9. Zoom In
10. Zoom Out
11. Preset view “Z”
12. Preset view “Rotated Z”
13. Preset view “X”
14. Preset view “Y”
15. Preset view “P”
16. Clear backplot

9.3.2 Graphical Program Display Area

9.3.2.1 Coordinate Display

In the upper-left corner of the program display is the coordinate display. It shows the position of the machine. To the left of the axis name, an origin symbol () is shown if the axis has been properly homed. To the right of the axis name, a limit symbol () is shown if the axis is on one of its limit switches.

To properly interpret these numbers, refer to the “Position:” indicator in the status bar. If the position is “Absolute”, then the displayed number is in the machine coordinate system. If it is “Relative”, then the displayed number is in the offset coordinate system. When the coordinates displayed are relative, the display will include a cyan “machine origin” marker (). If the position is “Commanded”, then it is the ideal position—for instance, the exact coordinate given in a G0 command. If it is “Actual”, then it is the position the machine has actually been moved to. These values can differ for several reasons: Following error, deadband, encoder resolution, or step size. For instance, if you command a movement to X 0.0033 on your mill, but one step of your stepper motor is 0.00125, then the “Commanded” position will be 0.0033 but the “Actual” position will be 0.0025 (2 steps) or 0.00375 (3 steps).

9.3.2.2 Preview Plot

When a file is loaded, a preview of it is shown in the display area. Fast moves (such as those produced by the G0 command) are shown as dotted green lines. Moves at a feed rate (such as those produced by the G1 command) are shown as solid white lines. Dwells (such as those produced by the G4 command) are shown as small “X” marks.

9.3.2.3 Program Extents

The “extents” of the program in each axis are shown. At each end, the least or greatest coordinate value is indicated. In the middle, the difference between the coordinates is shown. In Figure 9.1, the X extent of the file is from -2.05 to 2.09 inches, a total of 4.13 inches.

When some coordinates exceed the “soft limits” in the .ini file, the relevant dimension is shown in a different color. Here, the maximum limit is exceeded on the X axis:



9.3.2.4 Tool Cone

The location of the tip of the tool is indicated by the “tool cone”. The cone does not indicate anything about the shape, length, or radius of the tool.

When a tool is loaded (for instance, with the MDI command T1M6), the cone changes to a cylinder which shows the diameter of the tool given in the tool table file.

9.3.2.5 Backplot

When the machine moves, it leaves a trail called the backplot. The color of the line indicates the type of motion: Yellow for jogs, faint green for rapid movements, red for straight moves at a feed rate, and magenta for circular moves at a feed rate.

9.3.2.6 Interacting with the display

By left-clicking on a portion of the preview plot, the line will be highlighted in both the graphical and text displays. By left-clicking on an empty area, the highlighting will be removed.

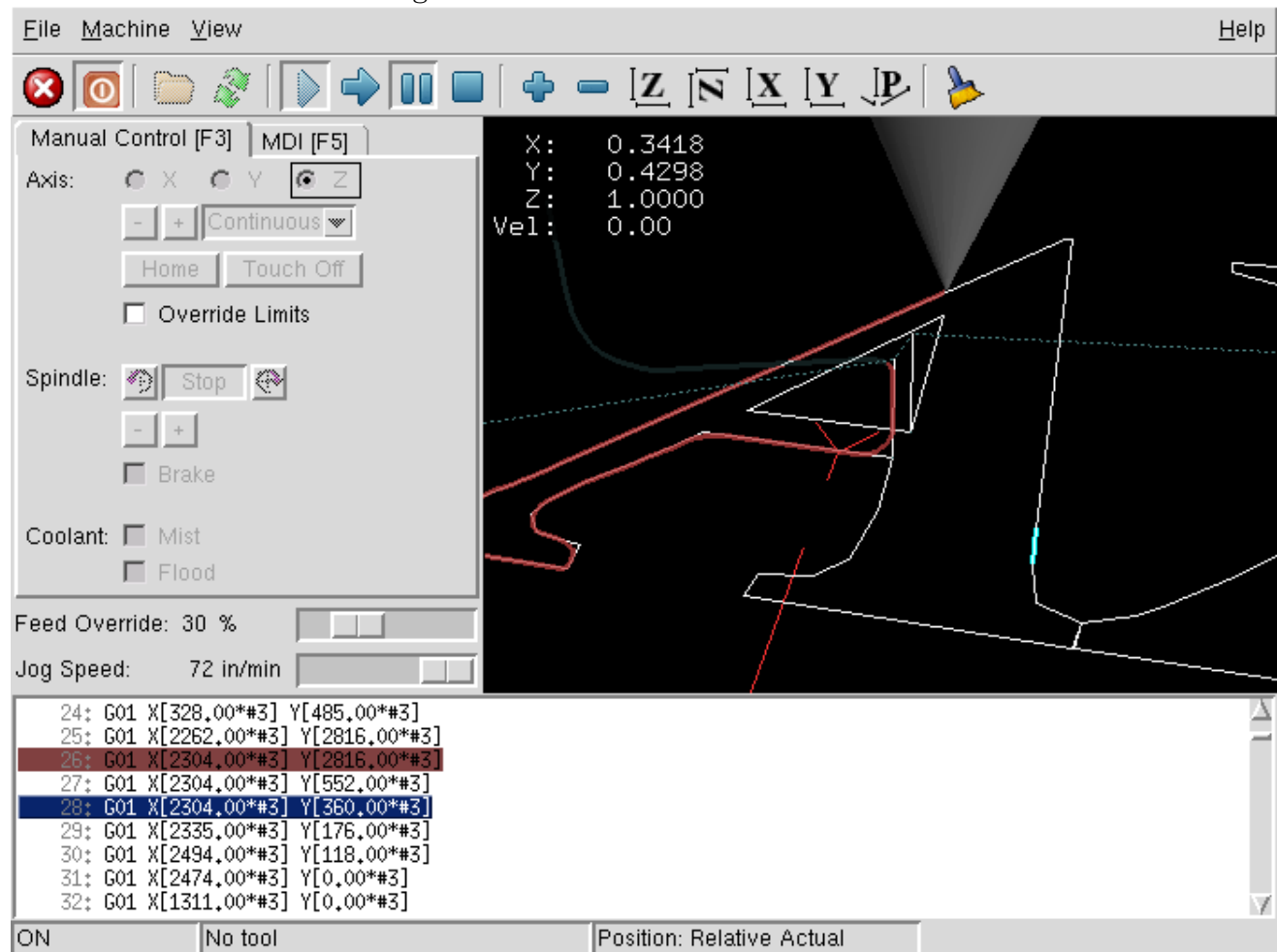
By dragging with the left mouse button pressed, the preview plot will be shifted (panned).

By dragging with shift and the left mouse button pressed, or by dragging with the mouse wheel pressed, the preview plot will be rotated. When a line is highlighted, the center of rotation is the center of the line. Otherwise, the center of rotation is the center of the file as a whole.

By rotating the mouse wheel, or by dragging with the right mouse button pressed, or by dragging with control and the left mouse button pressed, the preview plot will be zoomed in or out.

By clicking one of the “Preset View” icons, or by pressing “V”, several preset views may be selected.

Figure 9.2: Current and Selected Lines



9.3.3 Text Program Display Area

By left-clicking a line of the program, the line will be highlighted in both the graphical and text displays.

When the program is running, the line currently being executed is highlighted in red. If no line has been selected by the user, the text display will automatically scroll to show the current line.

9.3.4 Manual Control

While the machine is turned on but not running a program, the items in the “Manual Control” tab can be used to move the machining center or turn different parts of it on and off.

When the machine is not turned on, or when a program is running, the manual controls are unavailable.

Many of the items described below are not useful on all machines. When AXIS detects that a particular pin is not connected in HAL, the corresponding item in the Manual Control tab is removed. For instance, if the HAL pin `motion.spindle-brake` is not connected, then the “Brake” button will not appear on the screen. If the environment variable `AXIS_NO_AUTOCONFIGURE` is set, this behavior is disabled and all the items will appear.

9.3.4.1 The “Axis” group

“Axis” allows you to manually move the machine. This action is known as “jogging”. First, select the axis to be moved by clicking it. Then, click and hold the “+” or “-” button depending on the desired direction of motion. The first four axes can also be moved by the arrow keys (X and Y), PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keys (Z) and the [and] keys (A).

If “Continuous” is selected, the motion will continue as long as the button or key is pressed. If another value is selected, the machine will move exactly the displayed distance each time the button is clicked or the key is pressed. By default, the available values are:

```
0.1000 0.0100 0.0010 0.0001
```

The .ini file setting [DISPLAY] INCREMENTS can be used to override the default. Its value can contain decimal numbers (e.g., 0.1000) or fractional numbers (e.g., 1/16), optionally followed by a unit (one of 'cm', 'mm', 'um', 'inch', 'in', or 'mil'). If a unit is not specified the machine's native unit is assumed. For users who prefer metric units, a good setting might be

```
INCREMENTS = 10 um, 50 um, 0.1mm, 0.5mm, 1mm, 5mm, 10 mm
```

For users who prefer “imperial” units, a good setting might be

```
INCREMENTS = 1/4 in, 1/16 in, 1/32 in, 1/64 in, 1 mil, .1 mil
```

or

```
INCREMENTS = .5 in, .1 in, 50 mil, 10 mil, 5 mil, 1 mil, .1 mil
```

Metric and imperial distances may be mixed:

```
INCREMENTS = 1 inch, 1 mil, 1 cm, 1 mm, 1 um
```

If your machine has a homing sequence defined, the “Home All” button or the Ctrl-HOME key will send all axes home. Otherwise, the button will read “Home”, and will send the current axis home. Pressing the HOME key sends the current axis home, even if a homing sequence is defined. Depending on your configuration, homing may just set the axis value to be the absolute position 0.0, or it may make the machine move to a specific home location through use of “home switches”. See section 5.4 for more information on homing.

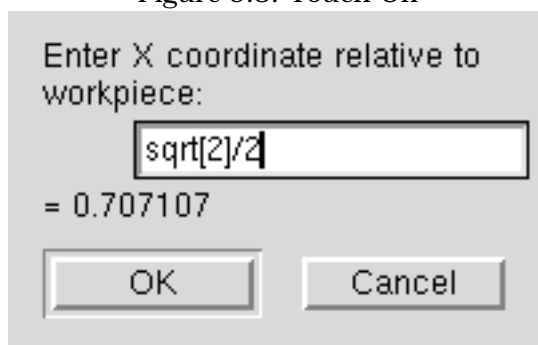
By pressing “Touch Off” or the END key, the “G54 offset” for the current axis is changed so that the current axis value will be the specified value. Expressions may be entered using the rules for rs274ngc programs, except that variables may not be referred to. The resulting value is shown as a number.

By pressing “Override Limits”, the machine will temporarily be allowed to jog off of a physical limit switch.

9.3.4.2 The “Spindle” group

The buttons on the first row select the direction for the spindle to rotate: Counterclockwise, Stopped, Clockwise. The buttons on the next row increase or decrease the rotation speed. The checkbox on the third row allows the spindle brake to be engaged or released. Depending on your machine configuration, not all the items in this group may appear.

Figure 9.3: Touch Off



Enter X coordinate relative to workpiece:

= 0.707107

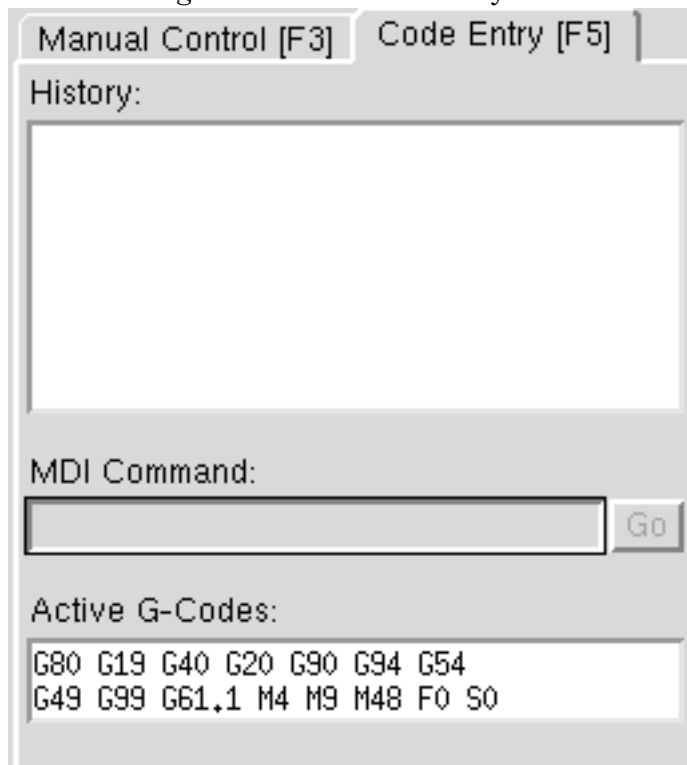
9.3.4.3 The “Coolant” group

The two buttons allow the “Mist” and “Flood” coolants to be turned on and off. Depending on your machine configuration, not all the items in this group may appear.

9.3.5 Code Entry

Code Entry” (also called MDI), allows G-code programs can be entered manually, one line at a time. When the machine is not turned on, or when a program is running, the code entry controls are unavailable.

Figure 9.4: The Code Entry tab



Manual Control [F3] Code Entry [F5]

History:

MDI Command:

Active G-Codes:

G80 G19 G40 G20 G90 G94 G54
G49 G99 G61.1 M4 M9 M48 F0 S0

9.3.5.1 History

This shows MDI commands that have been typed earlier in this session.

9.3.5.2 MDI Command

This allows you to enter a g-code command to be executed. Execute the command by pressing Enter or by clicking “Go”.

9.3.5.3 Active G-Codes

This shows the “modal codes” that are active in the interpreter. For instance, “G54” indicates that the “G54 offset” is applied to all coordinates that are entered.

9.3.6 Feed Override

By moving this slider, the programmed feed rate can be modified. For instance, if a program requests F60 and the slider is set to 120%, then the resulting feed rate will be 72.

9.3.7 Spindle Speed Override

By moving this slider, the programmed spindle feed rate can be modified. For instance, if a program requests F8000 and the slider is set to 80%, then the resulting spindle speed will be 6400. This item only appears when the HAL pin `motion.spindle-speed-out` is connected.

9.3.8 Jog Speed

By moving this slider, the speed of jogs can be modified. For instance, if the slider is set to 1 in/min, then a .01 inch jog will complete in about .6 seconds, or 1/100 of a minute. Near the left side (slow jogs) the values are spaced closely together, while near the right side (fast jogs) they are spaced much further apart, allowing a wide range of jog speeds with fine control when it is most important.

On machines with a rotary axis, a second jog speed slider is shown. This slider sets the jog rate for the rotary axes (A, B and C).

9.4 Keyboard Controls

Almost all actions in AXIS can be accomplished with the keyboard. A full list of keyboard shortcuts can be found in the AXIS Quick Reference, which can be displayed by choosing `HELP > QUICK REFERENCE`. Many of the shortcuts are unavailable when in Code Entry mode.

The most frequently used keyboard shortcuts are shown in Table [10.1](#).

9.5 emctop: Show EMC Status

AXIS includes a program called “emctop” which shows some of the details of emc’s state. You can run this program by invoking `MACHINE > SHOW EMC STATUS`

The name of each item is shown in the left column. The current value is shown in the right column. If the value has recently changed, it is shown on a red background.

Table 9.1: Most Common Keyboard Shortcuts

Keystroke	Action Taken
F1	Toggle Emergency Stop
F2	Turn machine on/off
, 1 .. 9, 0	Set feed override from 0% to 100%
X, `	Activate first axis
Y, 1	Activate second axis
Z, 2	Activate third axis
A, 3	Activate fourth axis
I	Select jog increment
C	Continuous jog
Control-Home	Perform homing sequence
End	Touch off: Set G54 offset for active axis
Left, Right	Jog first axis
Up, Down	Jog second axis
Pg Up, Pg Dn	Jog third axis
[,]	Jog fourth axis
O	Open File
Control-R	Reload File
R	Run file
P	Pause execution
S	Resume Execution
ESC	Stop execution
Control-K	Clear backplot
V	Cycle among preset views

9.6 mdi: Text-mode MDI interface

AXIS includes a program called “mdi” which allows text-mode entry of MDI commands to a running emc session. You can run this program by opening a terminal and typing

```
mdi /path/to/emc.nml
```

Once it is running, it displays the prompt `MDI>`. When a blank line is entered, the machine’s current position is shown. When a command is entered, it is sent to emc to be executed. A sample session of mdi is shown in Figure 9.6.

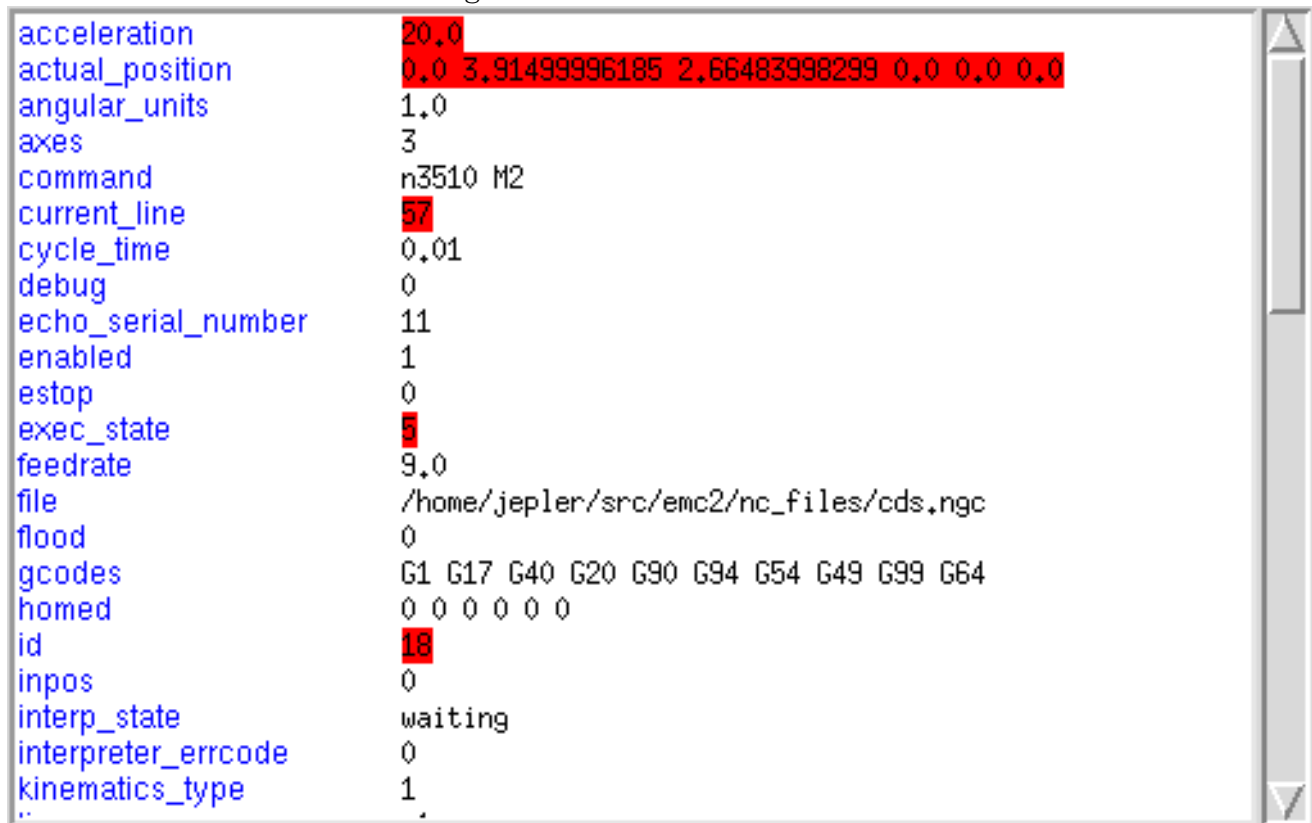
9.7 axis-remote: Send remote commands to the AXIS GUI

AXIS includes a program called “axis-remote” which can send certain commands to a running AXIS. The available commands are shown by running `axis-remote --help` and include checking whether AXIS is running (`--ping`), loading a file by name, reloading the currently loaded file (`--reload`), and making AXIS exit (`--quit`).

9.8 hal_manualtoolchange: Prompt the user to exchange tools

AXIS includes a userspace hal component called “hal_manualtoolchange”, which shows a window (Figure 9.7) when a M6 command is issued. After the OK button is pressed, execution of the program will continue.

Figure 9.5: EMC Status Window



acceleration	20.0
actual_position	0.0 3.91499996185 2.66483998299 0.0 0.0 0.0
angular_units	1.0
axes	3
command	n3510 M2
current_line	57
cycle_time	0.01
debug	0
echo_serial_number	11
enabled	1
estop	0
exec_state	5
feedrate	9.0
file	/home/jepler/src/emc2/nc_files/cds.ngc
flood	0
gcodes	G1 G17 G40 G20 G90 G94 G54 G49 G99 G64
homed	0 0 0 0 0 0
id	18
inpos	0
interp_state	waiting
interpreter_errcode	0
kinematics_type	1
..	.

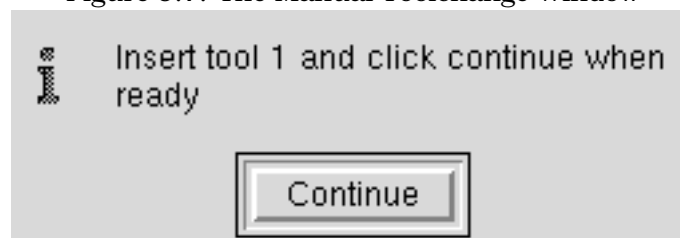
Figure 9.6: MDI Session

```
$ mdi ~/emc2/configs/sim/emc.nml
MDI>
(0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0)
MDI> G1 F5 X1
MDI>
(0.5928500000000374, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0)
MDI>
(1.0000000000000639, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0)
```

The HAL configuration file `configs/sim/axis_manualtoolchange.hal` shows the HAL commands necessary to use this component.

`hal_manualtoolchange` can be used even when AXIS is not used as the GUI.

Figure 9.7: The Manual Toolchange Window



9.9 Python modules

AXIS includes several Python modules which may be useful to others. For more information on one of these modules, use “`pydoc <module name>`” or read the source code. These modules include:

- `emc` provides access to the `emc` command, status, and error channels
- `gcode` provides access to the `rs274ngc` interpreter
- `rs274` provides additional tools for working with `rs274ngc` files
- `hal` allows the creation of userspace HAL components written in Python
- `_togl` provides an OpenGL widget that can be used in Tkinter applications
- `minigl` provides access to the subset of OpenGL used by AXIS

To use these modules in your own scripts, you must ensure that the directory where they reside is on Python’s module path. When running an installed version of `emc2`, this should happen automatically. When running “in-place”, this can be done by using `scripts/emc-environment`.

9.10 Using AXIS to control a CNC Lathe

By including the line

```
[DISPLAY]
LATHE = 1
```

in the ini file, AXIS selects lathe mode. The “Y” axis is not shown in coordinate readouts, the view is changed to show the Z axis extending to the right and the X axis extending towards the bottom of the screen, and several controls (such as those for preset views) are removed.

Pressing “V” zooms out to show the entire file, if one is loaded.

When in lathe mode, the shape of the loaded tool (if any) is shown.

9.11 Advanced configuration of AXIS

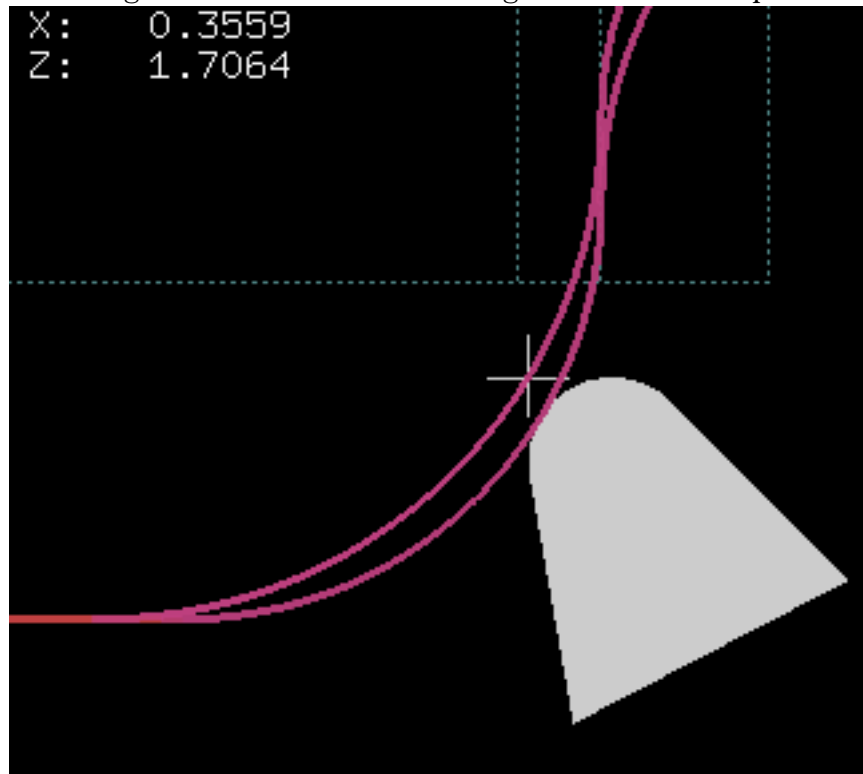
9.11.1 Program Filters

AXIS has the ability to send loaded files through a “filter program”. This filter can do any desired task: Something as simple as making sure the file ends with ‘M2’, or something as complicated as detecting whether the input is a depth image, and generating g-code to mill the shape it defines.

The `[FILTER]` section of the ini file controls how filters work. First, for each type of file, write a `PROGRAM_EXTENSION` line. Then, specify the program to execute for each type of file. This program is given the name of the input file as its first argument, and must write `rs274ngc` code to standard output. This output is what will be displayed in the text area, previewed in the display area, and executed by `emc` when “Run”. The following lines add support for the “image-to-gcode” converter included with `emc2`:

```
[FILTER]
PROGRAM_EXTENSION = .png, .gif Greyscale Depth Image
png = image-to-gcode
gif = image-to-gcode
```

Figure 9.8: Lathe Mode showing the lathe tool shape



It is also possible to specify an interpreter:

```
PROGRAM_EXTENSION = .py Python Script
py = python
```

In this way, any Python script can be opened, and its output is treated as g-code. One such example script is available at `nc_files/holecircle.py`. This script creates g-code for drilling a series of holes along the circumference of a circle.

If the environment variable `AXIS_PROGRESS_BAR` is set, then lines written to `stderr` of the form

```
FILTER_PROGRESS=%d
```

will set the `AXIS` progress bar to the given percentage. This feature should be used by any filter that runs for a long time.

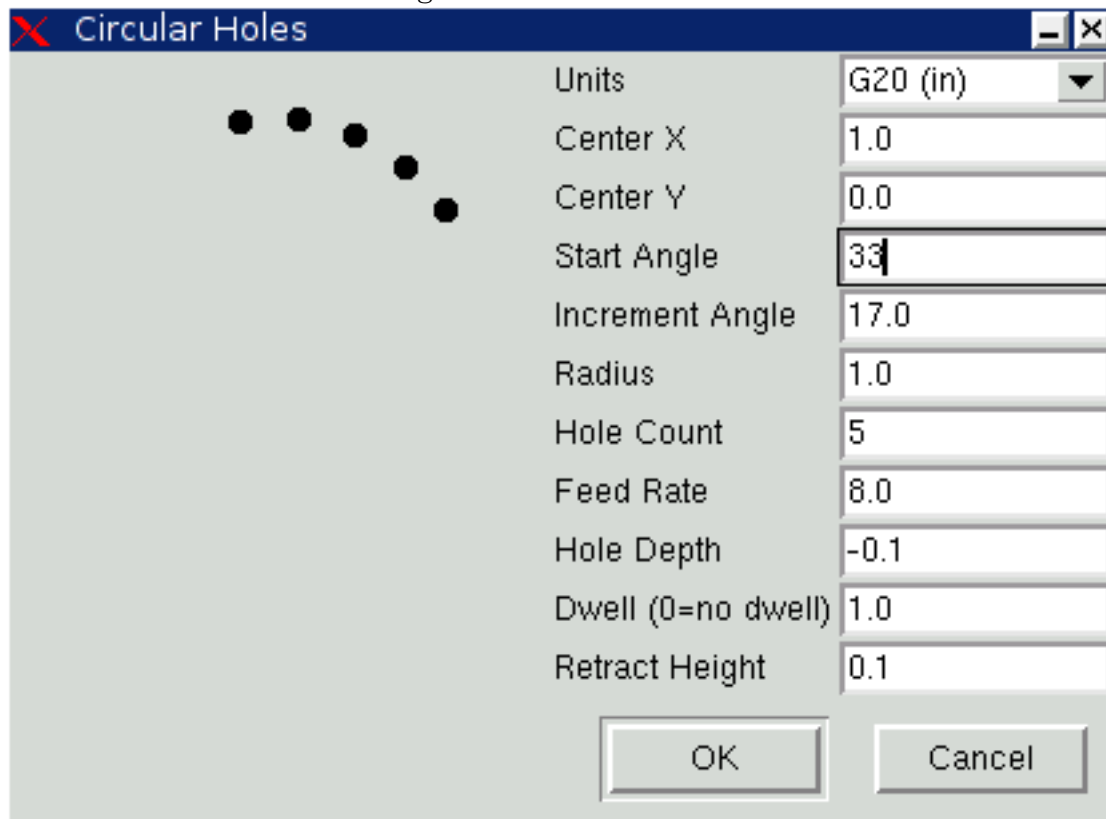
9.11.2 The X Resource Database

The colors of most elements of the `AXIS` user interface can be customized through the X Resource Database. The sample file `axis_light_background` changes the colors of the backplot window to a “dark lines on white background” scheme, and also serves as a reference for the configurable items in the display area.

For information about the other items which can be configured in Tk applications, see the Tk manpages.

Because modern desktop environments automatically make some settings in the X Resource Database that adversely affect `AXIS`, by default these settings are ignored. To make the X Resource Database items override `AXIS` defaults, include the following line in your X Resources:

Figure 9.9: Circular Holes



```
*Axis*optionLevel: widgetDefault
```

this causes the built-in options to be created at the option level “widgetDefault”, so that X Resources (which are level “userDefault”) can override them.

9.11.3 Physical jog wheels

To improve the interaction of AXIS with physical jog wheels, the axis currently selected in the GUI is also reported on a pin with a name like `axisui.jog.x`. Except for a short time when the active axis has just been changed, exactly one of these pins is `TRUE` at one time, and the rest are `FALSE`.

After AXIS has created these HAL pins, it executes the halfile named in `[HAL]POSTGUI_HALFILE`. Unlike `[HAL]HALFILE`, only one such file may be used.

9.11.4 ~/.axisrc

If it exists, the contents of `~/.axisrc` are executed as Python source code just before the AXIS gui is displayed. The details of what may be written in the `axisrc` are subject to change during the development cycle.

The lines shown in Figure 9.10 add Control-Q as a keyboard shortcut for Quit and turns on “Distance to go” by default.

9.11.5 External Editor

By defining `[DISPLAY]EDITOR`, the menu options File > Edit... and File > Edit Tool Table... become available. Useful values include `EDITOR=gedit` and `EDITOR=gnome-terminal -e vim`.

Figure 9.10: Sample .axisrc file

```
root_window.bind("<Control-q>", "destroy .")
help2.append(("Control-Q", "Quit"))
vars.show_distance_to_go.set(1)
```

9.11.6 Virtual Control Panel

AXIS can display a pyVCP xml file in the right-hand pane. For more information, see section ??.

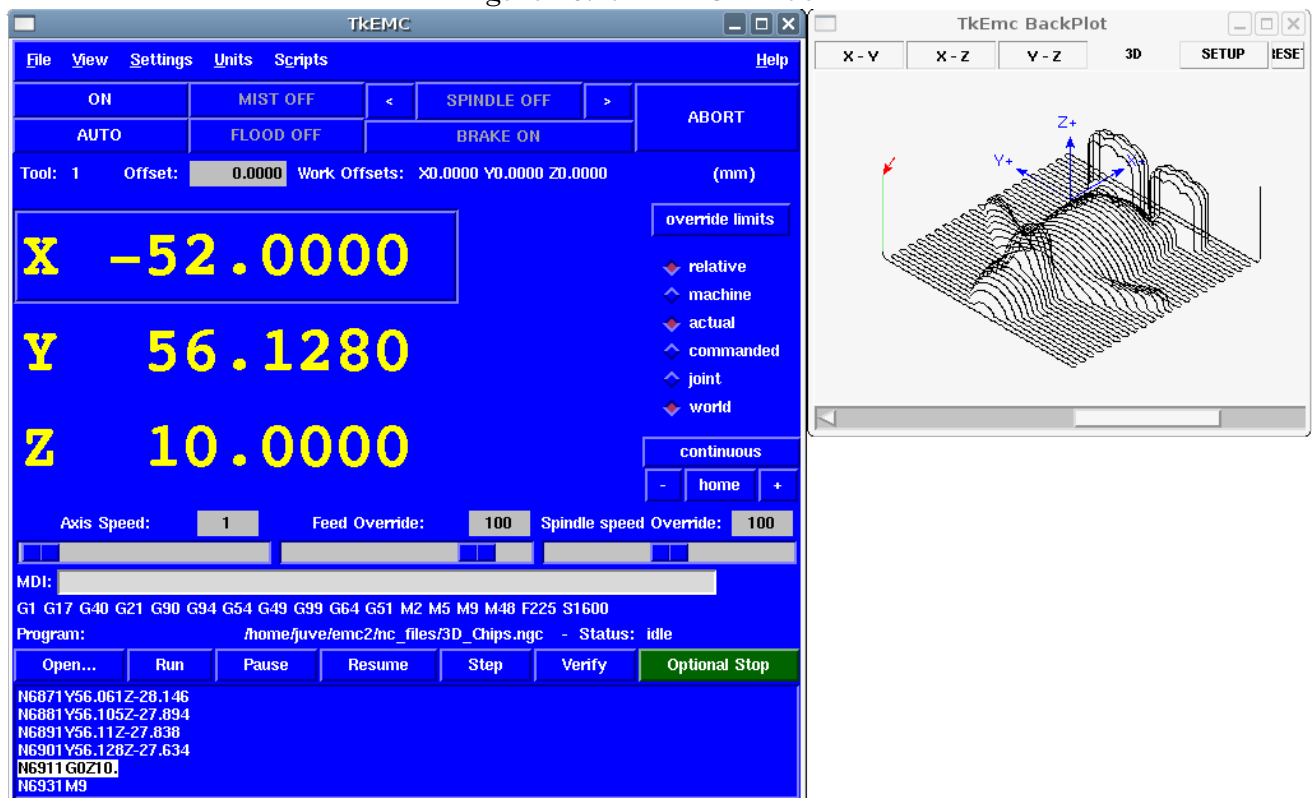
Chapter 10

Using the TkEMC Graphical Interface

10.1 Introduction

TkEMC is one of the most traditional graphical front-ends for EMC. It is written in Tcl and uses the Tk toolkit for the display. Being written in TCL makes it very portable (runs on a multitude of platforms).

Figure 10.1: TkEMC Window



10.2 Getting Started

To select TkEMC as the front-end for emc2, edit the .ini file. In the section [DISPLAY] change the DISPLAY line to read

```
DISPLAY = tkemc
```

Then, start `emc2` and select that ini file. The sample configuration `sim/tkemc.ini` is already configured to use TkEMC as its front-end.

When you start `emc2` with TkEMC, a window like the one in Figure 10.1 is shown.

10.2.1 A typical session with TkEMC

1. Start `emc` and select a configuration file.
2. Clear the “E-STOP” condition and turn the machine on (by pressing F1 then F2).
3. “Home” each axis.
4. Load the file to be milled.
5. Put the stock to be milled on the table.
6. Set the proper offsets for each axis by jogging and either homing again or right-clicking an axis name and entering an offset value.
7. Run the program.
8. To mill the same file again, return to step 6. To mill a different file, return to step 4. When you’re done, exit `emc2`.

10.3 Elements of the TkEMC window

The TkEMC window contains the following elements:

- A menubar that allows you to perform various actions ;
- A set of buttons that allow you to change the current working mode, start/stop spindle and other relevant I/O ;
- Status bar for various offset related displays ;
- Coordinate display area ;
- A set of sliders which control “Jogging speed”, “Feed Override”, and “Spindle speed Override” which allow you to increase or decrease those settings ;
- Manual data input text box ;
- Status bar display with active G-codes, M-codes, F- and S-words ;
- Interpreter related buttons ;
- A text display area that shows the G-code source of the loaded file.

10.3.1 Main buttons

From left to right, the buttons are:

1. Machine enable: “ESTOP” / “ESTOP RESET” / “ON”
2. Toggle mist
3. Decrease spindle speed
4. Set spindle direction “SPINDLE OFF” / “SPINDLE FORWARD” / “SPINDLE REVERSE”
5. Increase spindle speed
6. Abort

then on the second line:

1. Operation mode: “MANUAL” / “MDI” / “AUTO”
2. Toggle flood
3. Toggle spindle brake control

10.3.2 Offset display status bar

The Offset display status bar displays the currently selected tool (selected with Txx M6), the tool length offset (if active), and the work offsets (set by right clicking the coordinates).

10.3.3 Coordinate Display Area

The main part of the display shows the current position of the tool. The colour of the position readout depends on the state of the axis. If the axis is unhomed the axis will be displayed in yellow letters. Once homed it will be displayed in green letters. If there is an error with the current axis TkEMC will use red letter to show that. (for example if an hardware limit switch is tripped).

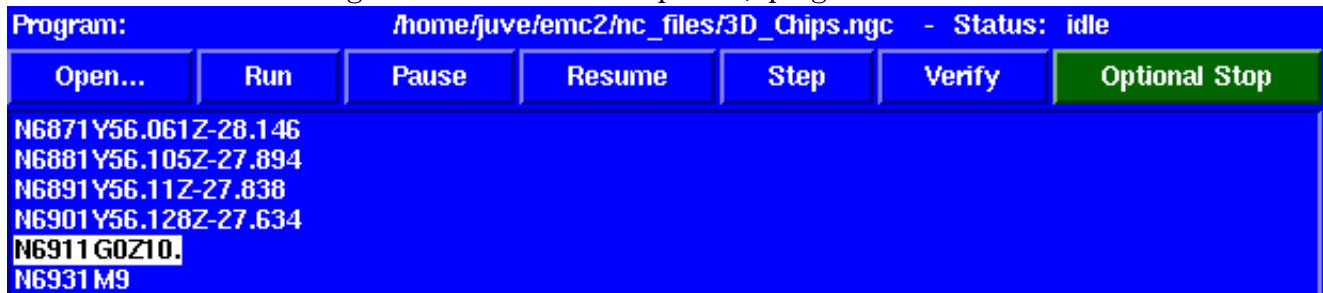
To properly interpret these numbers, refer to the radio boxes on the right. If the position is “Machine”, then the displayed number is in the machine coordinate system. If it is “Relative”, then the displayed number is in the offset coordinate system. Further down the choices can be “actual” or “commanded”. Actual refers to the feedback coming from encoders (if you have a servo machine), and the “commanded” refers to the position command send out to the motors. These values can differ for several reasons: Following error, deadband, encoder resolution, or step size. For instance, if you command a movement to X 0.0033 on your mill, but one step of your stepper motor is 0.00125, then the “Commanded” position will be 0.0033 but the “Actual” position will be 0.0025 (2 steps) or 0.00375 (3 steps).

Another set of radio buttons allows you to choose between “joint” and “world” view. These make little sense on a normal type of machine (e.g. trivial kinematics), but helps on machines with non-trivial kinematics like robots or stewart platforms. (you can read more about kinematics in the Integrators Handbook).

10.3.3.1 Backplot

When the machine moves, it leaves a trail called the backplot. You can start the backplot window by selecting View->Backplot.

Figure 10.2: TkEMC Interpreter / program control



10.3.4 Automatic control

10.3.4.1 Buttons for control

The buttons in the lower part of TkEMC (seen in Figure 10.2) are used to control the execution of a program: “Open” to load a program, “Verify” to check it for errors, “Run” to start the actual cutting, “Pause” to stop it while running, “Resume” to resume an already paused program, “Step” to advance one line in the program and “Optional Stop” to toggle the optional stop switch (if the button is green the program execution will be stopped on any M1 encountered).

10.3.4.2 Text Program Display Area

When the program is running, the line currently being executed is highlighted in white. The text display will automatically scroll to show the current line.

10.3.5 Manual Control

10.3.5.1 Implicit keys

TkEMC allows you to manually move the machine. This action is known as “jogging”. First, select the axis to be moved by clicking it. Then, click and hold the “+” or “-” button depending on the desired direction of motion. The first four axes can also be moved by the arrow keys (X and Y), PAGE UP and PAGE DOWN keys (Z) and the [and] keys (A).

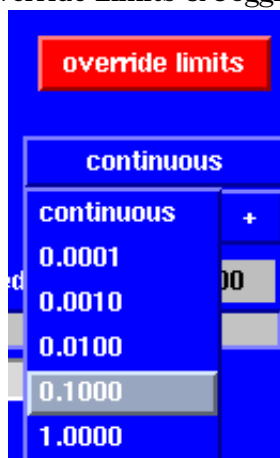
If “Continuous” is selected, the motion will continue as long as the button or key is pressed. If another value is selected, the machine will move exactly the displayed distance each time the button is clicked or the key is pressed. The available values are:

1.0000 0.1000 0.0100 0.0010 0.0001

By pressing “Home” or the HOME key, the selected axis will be homed. Depending on your configuration, this may just set the axis value to be the absolute position 0.0, or it may make the machine move to a specific home location through use of “home switches” (see section 5.4 for more information on homing)

By pressing “Override Limits”, the machine will temporarily be permitted to jog outside the limits defined in the .ini file. (Note: if “Override Limits” is active the button will be displayed using a red colour).

Figure 10.3: TkEMC Override Limits & Jogging increments example



10.3.5.2 The “Spindle” group

The buttons on the first row select the direction for the spindle to rotate: Counterclockwise, Stopped, Clockwise. The buttons on the next row increase or decrease the rotation speed. The checkbox on the third row allows the spindle brake to be engaged or released. Depending on your machine configuration, not all the items in this group may appear.

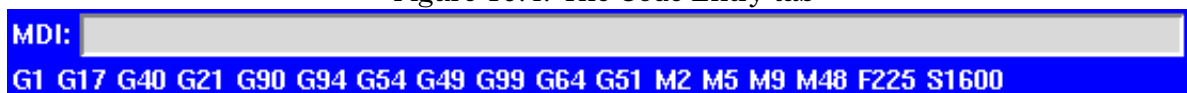
10.3.5.3 The “Coolant” group

The two buttons allow the “Mist” and “Flood” coolants to be turned on and off. Depending on your machine configuration, not all the items in this group may appear.

10.3.6 Code Entry

Manual Data Input (also called MDI), allows G-code programs to be entered manually, one line at a time. When the machine is not turned on, and not set to MDI mode, the code entry controls are unavailable.

Figure 10.4: The Code Entry tab



10.3.6.1 MDI:

This allows you to enter a g-code command to be executed. Execute the command by pressing Enter.

10.3.6.2 Active G-Codes

This shows the “modal codes” that are active in the interpreter. For instance, “G54” indicates that the “G54 offset” is applied to all coordinates that are entered.

10.3.7 Jog Speed

By moving this slider, the speed of jogs can be modified. The numbers above refer to axis units / second. The text box with the number is clickable. Once clicked a popup window will appear, allowing for a number to be entered.

10.3.8 Feed Override

By moving this slider, the programmed feed rate can be modified. For instance, if a program requests F60 and the slider is set to 120%, then the resulting feed rate will be 72. The text box with the number is clickable. Once clicked a popup window will appear, allowing for a number to be entered.

10.3.9 Spindle speed Override

The spindle speed override slider works exactly like the feed override slider, but it controls to the spindle speed. If a program requested S500 (spindle speed 500 RPM), and the slider is set to 80%, then the resulting spindle speed will be 400 RPM. This slider has a minimum and maximum value defined in the ini file. If those are missing the slider is stuck at 100%. The text box with the number is clickable. Once clicked a popup window will appear, allowing for a number to be entered.

10.4 Keyboard Controls

Almost all actions in TkEMC can be accomplished with the keyboard. Many of the shortcuts are unavailable when in MDI mode.

The most frequently used keyboard shortcuts are shown in Table 10.1.

Table 10.1: Most Common Keyboard Shortcuts

Keystroke	Action Taken
F1	Toggle Emergency Stop
F2	Turn machine on/off
‘, 1 .. 9, 0	Set feed override from 0% to 100%
X, ‘	Activate first axis
Y, 1	Activate second axis
Z, 2	Activate third axis
A, 3	Activate fourth axis
Home	Send active axis Home
Left, Right	Jog first axis
Up, Down	Jog second axis
Pg Up, Pg Dn	Jog third axis
[,]	Jog fourth axis
ESC	Stop execution

Chapter 11

Using The MINI Graphical Interface

11.1 Introduction¹

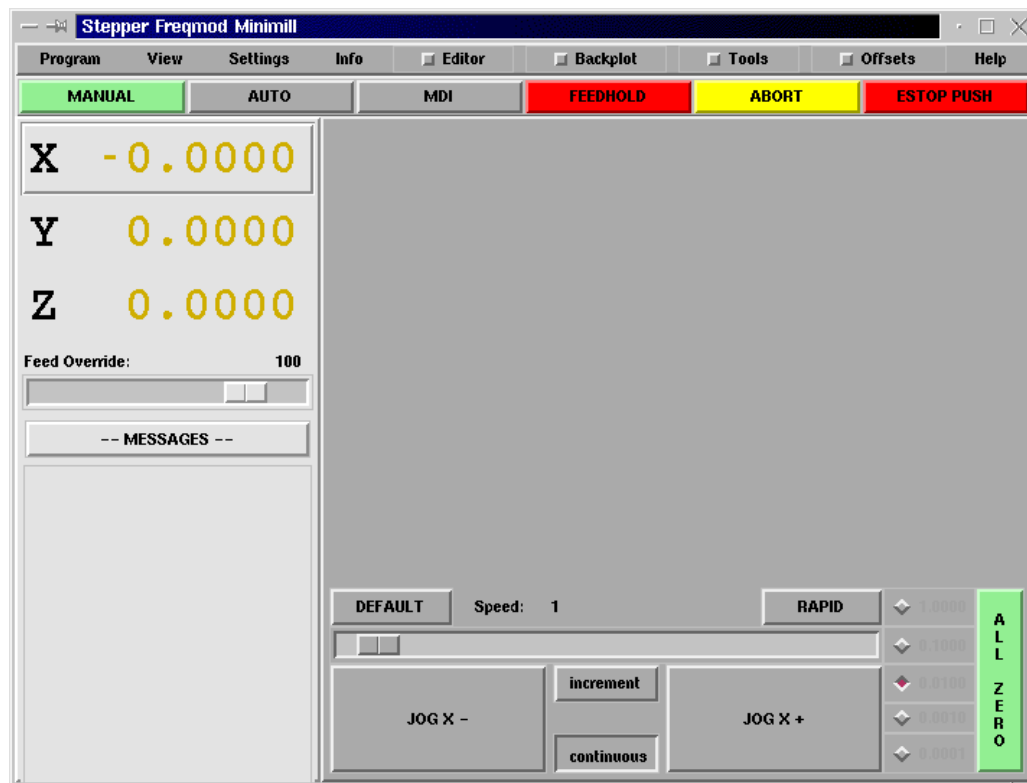


Figure 11.1: The Mini Graphical Interface

Mini was designed to be a full screen graphical interface. It was first written for the Sherline CNC but is available for anyone to use, copy, and distribute under the terms of the GPL copyright.

Rather than popup new windows for each thing that an operator might want to do, Mini allows you to display these within the regular screen. Parts of this chapter are copied from the instructions that were written for that mill by Joe Martin and Ray Henry.

¹Much of this chapter quotes from a chapter of the Sherline CNC operators manual.

11.2 Screen layout

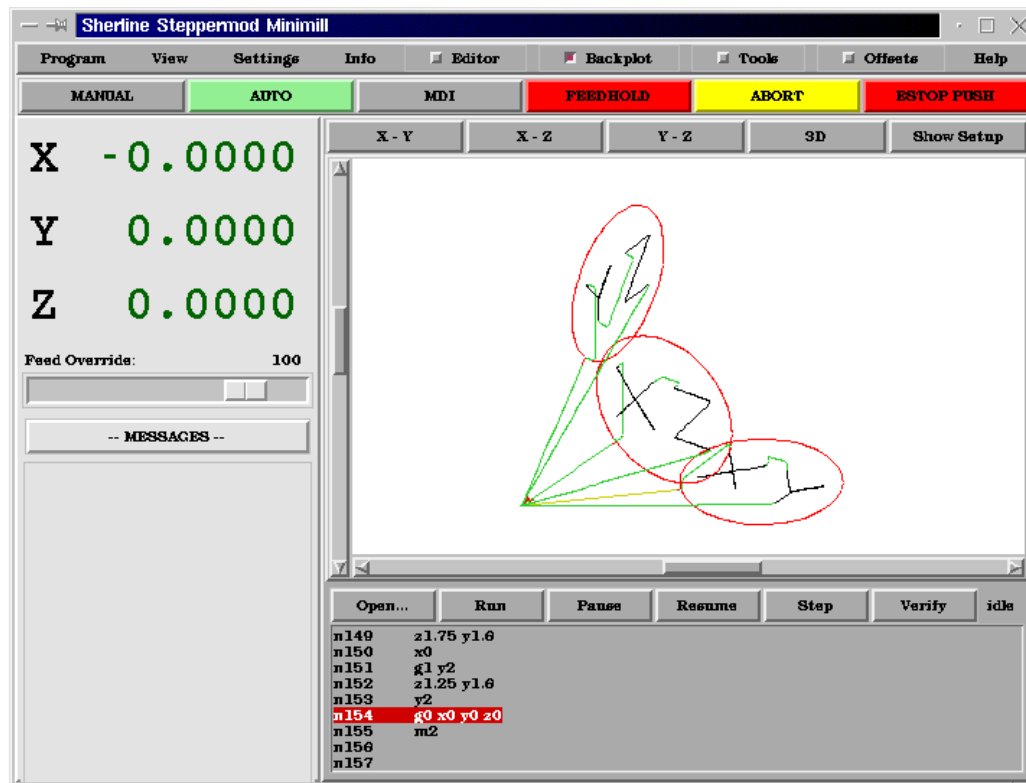


Figure 11.2: Mini Display for a Running EMC

The Mini screen is laid out in several sections. (See Figure 11.1) These include a menu across the top, a set of main control buttons just below the menu and two rather large columns of information that show the state of your machine and allow you to enter commands or programs.

When you compare figure 11.1 with figure 11.2 you will see many differences. In the second figure

- each axis has been homed – the display numbers are dark green
- the EMC mode is auto – the auto button has a light green background
- the backplotter has been turned on – backplot is visible in the pop-in window
- the tool path from the program is showing in the display.

Once you start working with Mini you will quickly discover how easily it shows the conditions of the EMC and allows you to make changes to it.

11.3 Menu Bar

The first row is the menu bar across the top. Here you can configure the screen to display additional information. Some of the items in this menu are very different from what you may be accustomed to with other programs. You should take a few minutes and look under each menu item in order to familiarize yourself with the features that are there.

The menu includes each of the following sections and subsections.

Program This menu includes both reset and exit functions. Reset will return the EMC to the condition that it was in when it started. Some startup configuration items like the normal program units can be specified in the ini file.

View This menu includes several screen elements that can be added so that you can see additional information during a run. These include

Position_Type This menu item adds a line above the main position displays that shows whether the displays are in inches or metric and whether they are Machine or Relative location and if they are Actual positions or Commanded positions. These can be changed using the Settings menu described below.

Tool_Info This adds a line immediately below the main position displays that shows which tool has been selected and the length of offset applied.

Offset_Info adds a line immediately below the tool info that shows what offsets have been applied. This is a total distance for each axis from machine zero.

Show_Restart adds a block of buttons to the right of the program display in auto mode. These allow the operator to restart a program after an abort or estop. These will pop in whenever estop or abort is pressed but can be shown by the operator anytime auto mode is active by selecting this menu item.

Hide_Restart removes the block of buttons that control the restart of a program that has been aborted or estopped.

Show_Split_Right changes the nature of the right hand column so that it shows both mode and pop-in information.

Show_Mode_Full changes the right hand column so that the mode buttons or displays fill the entire right side of the screen. In manual mode, running with mode full you will see spindle and lube control buttons as well as the motion buttons.

Show_Popin_Full changes the right hand column so that the popin fills the entire right side of the screen.

Settings These menu items allow the operator to control certain parameters during a run.

Actual_Position sets the main position displays to actual(machine based) values.

Commanded_Position sets the main position displays to the values that they were commanded to.

Machine_Position sets the main position displays to the absolute distance from where the machine was homed.

Relative_Position sets the main position displays to show the current position including any offsets like part zeros that are active. For more information on offsets see the chapter on coordinate systems.

Info lets you see a number of active things by writing their values into the MESSAGE pad.

Program_File will write the currently active program file name.

Editor_File will write the currently active file if the editor pop in is active and a file has been selected for editing.

Parameter_File will write the name of the file being used for program parameters. You can find more on this in the chapters on offsets and using variables for programming.

Tool_File will write the name of the tool file that is being used during this run.

Active_G-Codes will write a list of all of the modal program codes that are active whenever this item is selected. For more information about modal codes see the introductory part programming chapter.

Help opens a text window pop in that displays the contents of the help file.

You will notice between the info menu and the help menu there are a set of four buttons. These are called check buttons because they have a small box that shows red if they have been selected. These four buttons, Editor, Backplot, Tools, and Offsets pop in each of these screens. If more than one pop-in is active (button shown as red) you can toggle between these pop-ins by right clicking your mouse.

11.4 Control Button Bar

Below the menu line is a horizontal line of control buttons. These are the primary control buttons for the interface. Using these buttons you can change mode from [MANUAL] to [AUTO] to [MDI] (Manual Data Input). These buttons show a light green background whenever that mode is active.

You can also use the [FEEDHOLD], [ABORT], and [ESTOP] buttons to control a programmed move.

11.4.1 MANUAL

This button or pressing <F3> sets the EMC to Manual mode and displays an abbreviated set of buttons the operator can use to issue manual motion commands. The labels of the jog buttons change to match the active axis. Whenever Show_Mode_Full is active in in manual mode, you will see spindle and lube control buttons as well as the motion buttons. A keyboard <i> or <I> will switch from continuous jog to incremental jog. Pressing that key again will toggle the increment size through the available sizes.

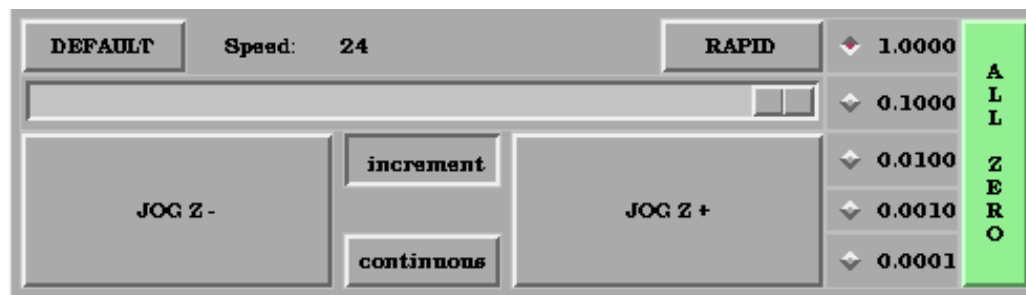


Figure 11.3: Manual Mode Buttons

A button has been added to designate the present position as the home position. We felt that a machine of this type (Sherline 5400) would be simpler to operate if it didn't use a machine home position. This button will zero out any offsets and will home all axes right where they are.

Axis focus is important here. Notice (in figure 11.1) that in manual mode you see a line or *groove* around the X axis to highlight its position display. This groove says that X is the active axis. It will be the target for jog moves made with the *plus* and *minus* jog buttons. You can change axis focus by clicking on any other axis display. You can also change axis focus in manual mode if you press its name key on your keyboard. Case is not important here. [Y] or [y] will shift the focus to the Y axis. [A] or [a] will shift the focus to the A axis. To help you remember which axis will jog when you press the jog buttons, the active axis name is displayed on them.

The EMC can jog (move a particular axis) as long as you hold the button down when it is set for *continuous*, or it can jog for a preset distance when it is set for *incremental*. You can also jog the active axis by pressing the plus [+] or minus [-] keys on the keyboard. Again, case is not important for keyboard jogs. The two small buttons between the large jog buttons let you set which kind of jog you want. When you are in incremental mode, the distance buttons come alive. You can set a distance by pressing it with the mouse.

You can toggle between distances by pressing [i] or [I] on the keyboard. Incremental jog has an interesting and often unexpected effect. If you press the jog button while a jog is in progress, it will add the distance to the position it was at when the second jog command was issued. Two one-inch jog presses in close succession will not get you two inches of movement. You have to wait until the first one is complete before jogging again.

Jog speed is displayed above the slider. It can be set using the slider by clicking in the slider's open slot on the side you want it to move toward, or by clicking on the [Default] or [Rapid] buttons. This setting only affects the jog move while in manual mode. Once a jog move is initiated, jog speed has no effect on the jog. As an example of this, say you set jog mode to *incremental* and the increment to 1 inch. Once you press the [Jog] button it will travel that inch at the rate at which it started.

11.4.2 AUTO

When the Auto button is pressed, or <F4> on the keyboard, the EMC is changed into that mode, a set of the traditional auto operation buttons is displayed, and a small text window opens to show a part program. During run the active line will be displayed as white lettering on a red background.

In the auto mode, many of the keyboard keys are bound to controls. For example the numbers above the querty keys are bound to feed rate override. The 0 sets 100%, 9 sets 90% and such. Other keys work much the same as they do with the tkemc graphical interface.

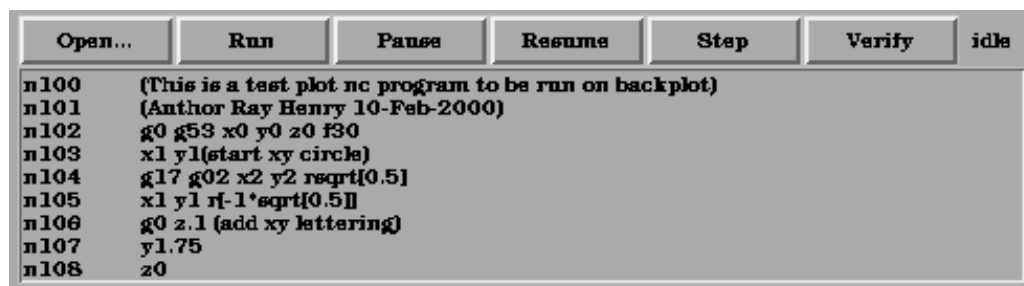


Figure 11.4: Auto Mode

Auto mode does not normally display the active or modal codes. If the operator wishes to check these, use menu Info -> Active_G-Codes. This will write all modal codes onto the message scratch pad.

If abort or estop is pressed during a run a set of buttons displays to the right of the text that allows the operator to shift the restart line forward or backwards. If the restart line is not the last active line, it will be highlighted as white letters on a blue background. Caution, a very slow feed rate, and a finger poised over the pause button is advised during any program restart.

The real heart of CNC machine tool work is the auto mode. Sherline's auto mode displays the typical functions that people have come to expect from the EMC. Along the top are a set of buttons which control what is happening in auto mode. Below them is the window that shows the part of the program currently being executed. As the program runs, the active line shows in white letters on a red background. The first three buttons, [Open], [Run], and [Pause] do about what you'd expect. [Pause] will stop the run right where it is. The next button, [Resume], will restart motion. They are like feedhold if used this way. Once [Pause] is pressed and motion has stopped, [Step] will resume motion and continue it to the end of the current block. Press [Step] again to get the motion of the next block. Press [Resume] and the interpreter goes back to reading ahead and running the program. The combination of [Pause] and [Step] work a lot like single block mode on many controllers. The difference is that [Pause] does not let motion continue to the end of the current block. Feed rate Override ... can be very handy as you approach a first cut.

Move in quickly at 100 percent, throttle back to 10% and toggle between [Feedhold] and 10% using the pause button. When you are satisfied that you've got it right, hit the zero to the right of nine and go.

The [Verify] button runs the interpreter through the code without initiating any motion. If Verify finds a problem it will stop the read near the problem block and put up some sort of message. Most of the time you will be able to figure out the problem with your program by reading the message and looking in the program window at the highlighted line. Some of the messages are not very helpful. Sometimes you will need to read a line or two ahead of the highlight to see the problem. Occasionally the message will refer to something well ahead of the highlight line. This often happens if you forget to end your program with an acceptable code like %, m2, m30, or m60.

11.4.3 MDI

The MDI button or <F5> sets the Manual Data Input mode. This mode displays a single line of text for block entry and shows the currently active modal codes for the interpreter.

MDI mode allows you to enter single blocks and have the interpreter execute them as if they were part of a program (kind of like a one-line program). You can execute circles, arcs, lines and such. You can even test sets of program lines by entering one block, waiting for that motion to end, and then enter the next block. Below the entry window, there is a listing of all of the current modal codes. This listing can be very handy. I often forget to enter a g00 before I command a motion. If nothing happens I look down there to see if g80 is in effect. G80 stops any motion. If it's there I remember to issue a block like g00 x0 y0 z0. In MDI you are entering text from the keyboard so none of the main keys work for commands to the running machine. [F1] will Estop the control.

Since many of the keyboard keys are needed for entry, most of the bindings that were available in auto mode are not available here.

11.4.4 [FEEDHOLD] – [CONTINUE]

Feedhold is a toggle. When the EMC is ready to handle or is handling a motion command this button shows the feedhold label on a red background. If feedhold has been pressed then it will show the continue label. Using it to pause motion has the advantage of being able to restart the program from where you stopped it. Feedhold will toggle between zero speed and whatever feed rate override was active before it was pressed. This button and the function that it activates is also bound to the pause button on most keyboards.

11.4.5 [ABORT]

The abort button stops any motion when it is pressed. It also removes the motion command from the EMC. No further motions are cued up after this button is pressed. If you are in auto mode, this button removes the rest of the program from the motion cue. It also records the number of the line that was executing when it was pressed. You can use this line number to restart the program after you have cleared up the reasons for pressing it.

11.4.6 [ESTOP]

The estop button is also a toggle but it works in three possible settings.

- When Mini starts up it will show a raised button with red background with black letters that say “ESTOP PUSH.” This is the correct state of the machine when you want to run a program or jog an axis. Estop is ready to work for you when it looks like this.
- If you push the estop button while a motion is being executed, you will see a recessed gray button that says “ESTOPPED.” You will not be able to move an axis or do any work from the Mini gui when the estop button displays this way. Pressing it with your mouse will return Mini to normal ready condition.
- A third view is possible here. A recessed green button means that estop has been take off but the machine has not been turned on. Normally this only happens when <F1> estop has been pressed but <F2> has not been pressed.

Joe Martin says, “When all else fails press a software [ESTOP].” This does everything that abort does but adds in a reset so that the EMC returns to the standard settings that it wakes up on. If you have an external estop circuit that watches the relevant parallel port or DIO pin, a software estop can turn off power to the motors.

Most of the time, when we abort or E-Stop it's because something went wrong. Perhaps we broke a tool and want to change it. We switch to manual mode and raise the spindle, change tools, and assuming that we got the length the same, get ready to go on. If we return the tool to the same place where the abort was issued, the EMC will work perfectly. It is possible to move the restart line back or ahead of where the abort happened. If you press the [Back] or [Ahead] buttons you will see a blue highlight that shows the relationship between the abort line and the one on which the EMC will start up again. By thinking through what is happening at the time of the restart you can place the tool tip where it will resume work in an acceptable manner. You will need to think through things like tool offsets barriers to motion along a diagonal line and such before you press the [Restart] button.

11.5 Left Column

There are two columns below the control line. The left side of the screen displays information of interest to the operator. There are very few buttons to press here.

11.5.1 Axis Position Displays

The axis position displays work exactly like they do with tkemc. The color of the letters is important.

- Red indicates that the machine is sitting on a limit switch or the polarity of a min or max limit is set wrong in the ini file.
- Yellow indicates that the machine is ready to be homed.
- Green indicates that the machine has been homed.

The position can be changed to display any one of several values by using the menu settings. The startup or default settings can be changed in the ini file so these displays wake up just the way that you want them.

11.5.2 Feed rate Override

Immediately below the axis position displays is the feed rate override slider. You can operate feed rate override and feedhold in any mode of operation. Override will change the speed of jogs or feed rate in manual or MDI modes. You can adjust feed rate override by grabbing the slider with your mouse and dragging it along the groove. You can also change feed rate a percent at a time by clicking in the slider's groove. In auto mode you can also set feed override in 10% increments by pressing the top row of numbers. This slider is a handy visual reference to how much override is being applied to programmed feed rate.

11.5.3 Messages

The message display located under the axis positions is a sort of scratch pad for the EMC. If there are problems it will report them there. If you try to home or move an axis when the [ESTOP] button is pressed, you'll get a message that says something about commanding motion when the EMC is not ready. If an axis faults out for something like falling behind, the message pad will show what happened. If you want to remind an operator to change a tool, for example, you can add a line of code to your program that will display in the message box. An example might be (msg, change to tool #3 and press resume). This line of code, included in a program, will display "change to tool #3 and press resume" in the message box. The word msg, (with comma included) is the command to make this happen; without *msg*, the message wouldn't be displayed. It will still show in the auto modes' display of the program file.

To erase messages simply click the message button at the top of the pad or on the keyboard hold down the [Alt] key and press the [m] key.

11.6 Right Column

The right column is a general purpose place to display and work. Here you can see the modal buttons and text entry or displays. Here you can view a plot of the tool path that will be commanded by your program. You can also write programs and control tools and offsets here. The modal screens have been described above. Each of the popin displays are described in detail below.

11.6.1 Program Editor

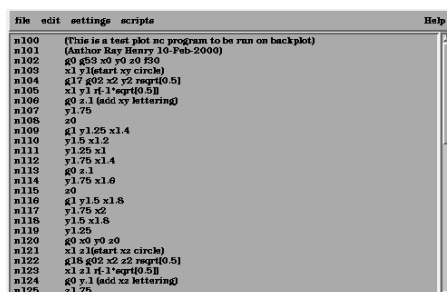


Figure 11.5: Mini Text Editor

The editor is rather limited compared to many modern text editors. It does not have *undo* nor *paste* between windows with the clipboard. These were eliminated because of interaction with a running program. Future releases will replace these functions so that it will work the way you've come to expect from a text editor. It is included because it has the rather nice feature of being able to number and renumber lines in the way that the interpreter expects of a file. It will also allow you to

cut and paste from one part of a file to another. In addition, it will allow you to save your changes and submit them to the EMC interpreter with the same menu click. You can work on a file in here for a while and then save and load if the EMC is in Auto mode. If you have been running a file and find that you need to edit it, that file will be placed in the editor when you click on the editor button on the top menu.

11.6.2 Backplot Display

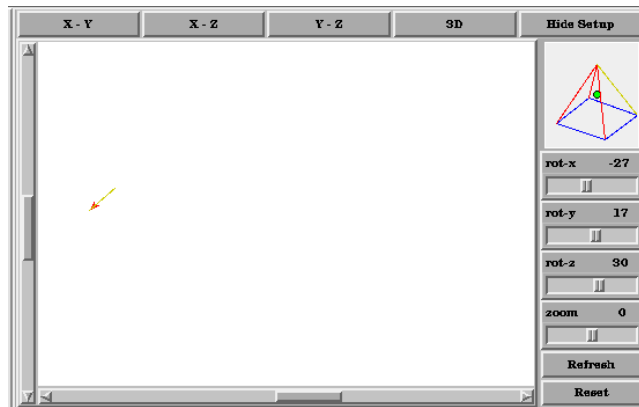


Figure 11.6: Mini's Backplotter

Backplot [Backplot] will show the tool path that can be viewed from a chosen direction. '3-D' is the default. Other choices and controls are displayed along the top and right side of the pop-in. If you are in the middle of a cut when you press one of these control buttons the machine will pause long enough to re-compute the view.

Along the right side of the pop-in there is a small pyramid shaped graphic that tries to show the angle you are viewing the tool path from. Below it are a series of sliders that allow you to change the angle of view and the size of the plot. You can rotate the little position angle display with these. They take effect when you press the [Refresh] button. The [Reset] button removes all of the paths from the display and readies it for a new run of the program but retains your settings for that session.

If backplot is started before a program is started, it will try to use some color lines to indicate the kind of motion that was used to make it. A green line is a rapid move. A black line is a feed rate move. Blue and red indicate arcs in counterclockwise and clockwise directions.

The backplotter with Mini allows you to zoom and rotate views after you have run your program but it is not intended to store a tool path for a long period of time.

11.6.3 Tool Page

The tool page is pretty much like the others. You can set length and diameter values here and they become effective when you press the [Enter] key. You will need to set up your tool information before you begin to run a program. You can't change tool offsets while the program is running or when the program is paused.

The [Add Tools] and [Remove Tools] buttons work on the bottom of the tool list so you will want to fill in tool information in descending order. Once a new tool has been added, you can use it in a program with the usual G-code commands. There is a 32 tool limit in the current EMC configuration files but you will run out of display space in Mini long before you get there. (Hint You can use menu -> view -> show popin full to see more tools if you need.)

TOOL SETUP
Click or tab to edit. Press enter to return to keyboard machine control.

TOOL NUMBER	LENGTH	DIAMETER	COMMENT
1	1.456	0.250	Drill
2	1.000	0.4968	End Mill
3	0.0	0.0	empty
4	0.0	0.0	empty
5	0.0	0.0	empty
6	0.0	0.0	empty

Figure 11.7: Mini Tool Display

11.6.4 Offset Page

The offset page can be used to display and setup work offsets. The coordinate system is selected along the left hand side of the window. Once you have selected a coordinate system you can enter values or move an axis to a teach position. You can also teach using an edgfinder by adding the

COORDINATE SYSTEM SETUP
Click value to edit with keyboard. Press enter to return to keyboard control of machine.

Axis	Value	
X	0.000000	<input type="button" value="Teach"/>
Y	0.000000	<input type="button" value="Teach"/>
Z	0.000000	<input type="button" value="Teach"/>

Offset By Radius

Offset By Length

Figure 11.8: Mini Offset Display

radius and length to the offset_by widgets. When you do this you may need to add or subtract the radius depending upon which surface you choose to touch from. This is selected with the add or subtract radiobuttons below the offset windows.

The zero all for the active coordinate system button will remove any offsets that you have showing but they are not set to zero in the variable file until you press the write and load file button as well. This write and load file button is the one to use when you have set all of the axis values that you want for a coordinate system.

11.7 Keyboard Bindings

A number of the bindings used with tkemc have been preserved with mini. A few of the bindings have been changed to extend that set or to ease the operation of a machine using this interface. Some keys operate the same regardless of the mode. Others change with the mode that EMC is operating in.

11.7.1 Common Keys

Pause Toggle feedhold

Escape abort motion

F1 toggle estop/estop reset state

F2 toggle machine off/machine on state

F3 manual mode

F4 auto mode

F5 MDI mode

F6 reset interpreter

The following only work for machines using auxiliary I/O

F7 toggle mist on/mist off

F8 toggle flood on/flood off

F9 toggle spindle forward/off

F10 toggle spindle reverse/off

F11 decrease spindle speed

F12 increase spindle speed

11.7.2 Manual Mode

1-9 0 set feed override to 10%-90%, 0 is 100%

~ set feed override to 0 or feedhold

x select X axis

y select Y axis

z select Z axis

a select A axis

b select B axis

c select C axis

Left Right Arrow jog X axis

Up Down Arrow jog Y axis

Page Up Down jog Z axis

- _ jog the active axis in the minus direction

+ = jog the active axis in the plus direction.

Home home selected axis

i I toggle through jog increments

The following only work with a machine using auxiliary I/O

b take spindle brake off

Alt-b put spindle brake on

11.7.3 Auto Mode

1-9,0 set feed override to 10%-90%, 0 is 100%

~ set feed override to 0 or feedhold

o/O open a program

r/R run an opened program

p/P pause an executing program

s/S resume a paused program

a/A step one line in a paused program

11.8 Misc

One of the features of Mini is that it displays any axis above number 2 as a rotary and will display degree units for it. It also converts to degree units for incremental jogs when a rotary axis has the focus.

Chapter 12

Machining Center Overview

This section gives a brief description of how a machining center is viewed from the input and output ends of the Interpreter. It is assumed the reader is already familiar with machining centers.

Both the RS274/NGC input language and the output canonical machining functions have a view of (1) mechanical components of a machining center being controlled and (2) what activities of the machining center may be controlled, and what data is used in control.

The view here includes some items that a given machining center may not have, such as a pallet shuttle. The RS274/NGC language and canonical machining functions may be used with such a machine provided that no NC program used with the controller includes commands intended to activate physical capabilities the machine does not have. For such a machine, it would be useful to modify the Interpreter so it will reject input commands and will not produce output canonical function calls addressed to non-existent equipment.

12.1 Mechanical Components

A machining center has many mechanical components that may be controlled or may affect the way in which control is exercised. This section describes the subset of those components that interact with the Interpreter. Mechanical components that do not interact directly with the Interpreter, such as the jog buttons, are not described here, even if they affect control.

12.1.1 Axes

Any machining center has one or more Axes. Different types of machining centers have different combinations. For instance, a “4-axis milling machine” may have XYZA or XYZB axes. A lathe typically has XZ axes. A foam-cutting machine may have XYUZ axes.¹²

12.1.1.1 Primary Linear Axes

The X, Y, and Z axes produce linear motion in three mutually orthogonal directions

¹If the motion of mechanical components is not independent, as with hexapod machines, the RS274/NGC language and the canonical machining functions will still be usable, as long as the lower levels of control know how to control the actual mechanisms to produce the same relative motion of tool and workpiece as would be produced by independent axes. This is called *kinematics*.

²In EMC, the case of a XYYZ “gantry” machine with two motors for one axis is better handled by kinematics rather than by a second linear axis.

12.1.1.2 Secondary Linear Axes

The U, V, and W axes produce linear motion in three mutually orthogonal directions. Typically, X and U are parallel, Y and V are parallel, and Z and W are parallel.

12.1.1.3 Rotational Axes

The A, B and C axes produce angular motion (rotation). Typically, A rotates around a line parallel to X, B rotates around a line parallel to Y, and C rotates around a line parallel to Z.

12.1.2 Spindle

A machining center has a spindle which holds one cutting tool, probe, or other item. The spindle can rotate in either direction, and it can be made to rotate at a constant rate, which may be changed. Except on machines where the spindle may be moved by moving a rotational axis, the axis of the spindle is kept parallel to the Z-axis and is coincident with the Z-axis when X and Y are zero. The spindle can be stopped in a fixed orientation or stopped without specifying orientation.

12.1.3 Coolant

A machining center has components to provide mist coolant and/or flood coolant.

12.1.4 Pallet Shuttle

A machining center has a pallet shuttle system. The system has two movable pallets on which workpieces can be fixtured. Only one pallet at a time is in position for machining.

12.1.5 Tool Carousel

A machining center has a tool carousel with slots for tools fixed in tool holders.

12.1.6 Tool Changer

A machining center has a mechanism for changing tools (fixed in tool holders) between the spindle and the tool carousel.

12.1.7 Message Display

A machining center has a device that can display messages.

12.1.8 Feed and Speed Override Switches

A machining center has separate feed and speed override switches, which let the operator specify that the actual feed rate or spindle speed used in machining should be some percentage of the programmed rate. See Section [12.3.1](#).

12.1.9 Block Delete Switch

A machining center has a block delete switch. See Section [12.3.2](#).

12.1.10 Optional Program Stop Switch

A machining center has an optional program stop switch. See Section [12.3.3](#).

12.2 Control and Data Components

12.2.1 Linear Axes

The X, Y, and Z axes form a standard right-handed coordinate system of orthogonal linear axes. Positions of the three linear motion mechanisms are expressed using coordinates on these axes.

The U, V and W axes also form a standard right-handed coordinate system. X and U are parallel, Y and V are parallel, and Z and W are parallel.

12.2.2 Rotational Axes

The rotational axes are measured in degrees as wrapped linear axes in which the direction of positive rotation is counterclockwise when viewed from the positive end of the corresponding X, Y, or Z-axis. By “wrapped linear axis,” we mean one on which the angular position increases without limit (goes towards plus infinity) as the axis turns counterclockwise and decreases without limit (goes towards minus infinity) as the axis turns clockwise. Wrapped linear axes are used regardless of whether or not there is a mechanical limit on rotation.

Clockwise or counterclockwise is from the point of view of the workpiece. If the workpiece is fastened to a turntable which turns on a rotational axis, a counterclockwise turn from the point of view of the workpiece is accomplished by turning the turntable in a direction that (for most common machine configurations) looks clockwise from the point of view of someone standing next to the machine.³

12.2.3 Controlled Point

The controlled point is the point whose position and rate of motion are controlled. When the tool length offset is zero (the default value), this is a point on the spindle axis (often called the gauge point) that is some fixed distance beyond the end of the spindle, usually near the end of a tool holder that fits into the spindle. The location of the controlled point can be moved out along the spindle axis by specifying some positive amount for the tool length offset. This amount is normally the length of the cutting tool in use, so that the controlled point is at the end of the cutting tool. On a lathe, tool length offsets can be specified for X and Z axes, and the controlled point is either at the tool tip or slightly outside it (where the perpendicular, axis-aligned lines touched by the “front” and “side” of the tool intersect).

12.2.4 Coordinated Linear Motion

To drive a tool along a specified path, a machining center must often coordinate the motion of several axes. We use the term “coordinated linear motion” to describe the situation in which, nominally, each axis moves at constant speed and all axes move from their starting positions to their end

³If the parallelism requirement is violated, the system builder will have to say how to distinguish clockwise from counterclockwise.

positions at the same time. If only the X, Y, and Z axes (or any one or two of them) move, this produces motion in a straight line, hence the word “linear” in the term. In actual motions, it is often not possible to maintain constant speed because acceleration or deceleration is required at the beginning and/or end of the motion. It is feasible, however, to control the axes so that, at all times, each axis has completed the same fraction of its required motion as the other axes. This moves the tool along same path, and we also call this kind of motion coordinated linear motion.

Coordinated linear motion can be performed either at the prevailing feed rate, or at traverse rate, or it may be synchronized to the spindle rotation. If physical limits on axis speed make the desired rate unobtainable, all axes are slowed to maintain the desired path.

12.2.5 Feed Rate

The rate at which the controlled point or the axes move is nominally a steady rate which may be set by the user. In the Interpreter, the interpretation of the feed rate is as follows unless “inverse time feed” or “feed per revolution” modes are being used (see Section 14.20).

1. If any of XYZ are moving, F is in units per minute in the XYZ cartesian system, and all other axes (UVWABC) move so as to start and stop in coordinated fashion
2. Otherwise, if any of UVW are moving, F is in units per minute in the UVW cartesian system, and all other axes (ABC) move so as to start and stop in coordinated fashion
3. Otherwise, the move is pure rotary motion and the F word is in rotary units in the ABC “pseudo-cartesian” system.

12.2.6 Coolant

Flood coolant and mist coolant may each be turned on independently. The RS274/NGC language turns them off together (see Section 15.4).

12.2.7 Dwell

A machining center may be commanded to dwell (i.e., keep all axes unmoving) for a specific amount of time. The most common use of dwell is to break and clear chips, so the spindle is usually turning during a dwell. Regardless of the Path Control Mode (see Section 12.2.15) the machine will stop exactly at the end of the previous programmed move, as though it was in exact path mode.

12.2.8 Units

Units used for distances along the X, Y, and Z axes may be measured in millimeters or inches. Units for all other quantities involved in machine control cannot be changed. Different quantities use different specific units. Spindle speed is measured in revolutions per minute. The positions of rotational axes are measured in degrees. Feed rates are expressed in current length units per minute, or degrees per minute, or length units per spindle revolution, as described in Section 12.2.5.

12.2.9 Current Position

The controlled point is always at some location called the “current position,” and the controller always knows where that is. The numbers representing the current position must be adjusted in the absence of any axis motion if any of several events take place:

1. Length units are changed.
2. Tool length offset is changed.
3. Coordinate system offsets are changed.

12.2.10 Selected Plane

There is always a “selected plane”, which must be the XY-plane, the YZ-plane, or the XZ-plane of the machining center. The Z-axis is, of course, perpendicular to the XY-plane, the X-axis to the YZ-plane, and the Y-axis to the XZ-plane.

12.2.11 Tool Carousel

Zero or one tool is assigned to each slot in the tool carousel.

12.2.12 Tool Change

A machining center may be commanded to change tools.

12.2.13 Pallet Shuttle

The two pallets may be exchanged by command.

12.2.14 Feed and Speed Override Switches

The feed and speed override switches may be enabled (so they work as expected) or disabled (so they have no effect on the feed rate or spindle speed). The RS274/NGC language has one command that enables both switches and one command that disables both (see Section 15.5). See Section 12.3.1 for further details.

12.2.15 Path Control Mode

The machining center may be put into any one of three path control modes: (1) exact stop mode, (2) exact path mode, or (3) continuous mode with optional tolerance. In exact stop mode, the machine stops briefly at the end of each programmed move. In exact path mode, the machine follows the programmed path as exactly as possible, slowing or stopping if necessary at sharp corners of the path. In continuous mode, sharp corners of the path may be rounded slightly so that the feed rate may be kept up (but by no more than the tolerance, if specified). See Section 14.15.

12.3 Interpreter Interaction with Switches

The Interpreter interacts with several switches. This section describes the interactions in more detail. In no case does the Interpreter know what the setting of any of these switches is.

12.3.1 Feed and Speed Override Switches

The Interpreter will interpret RS274/NGC commands which enable (M48) or disable (M49) the feed and speed override switches. For certain moves, such as the traverse out of the end of a thread during a threading cycle, the switches are disabled automatically.

EMC2 reacts to the speed and feed override settings when these switches are enabled.

12.3.2 Block Delete Switch

If the block delete switch is on, lines of RS274/NGC code which start with a slash (the block delete character) are not interpreted. If the switch is off, such lines are interpreted. Normally the block delete switch should be set before starting the NGC program.

12.3.3 Optional Program Stop Switch

If this switch is on and an M1 code is encountered, program execution is paused.

12.4 Tool File

A tool file is required to use the Interpreter. The file tells which tools are in which carousel slots and what the length and diameter of each tool are.

The file consists of any number of header lines, followed by one blank line, followed by any number of lines of data. The header lines are ignored by the interpreter. It is important that there be exactly one blank line (with no spaces or tabs, even) before the data. The header line shown in Table 12.1 describes the data columns, so it is suggested (but not required) that such a line always be included in the header.

Each data line of the file contains the data for one tool. The line may contain 4 or 5 elements (“mill format”) or 8 or 9 elements (“lathe format”).

The units used for the length and diameter are in machine units.

The lines do not have to be in any particular order. Switching the order of lines has no effect unless the same slot number is used on two or more lines, which should not normally be done, in which case the data for only the last such line will be used.

In emc, the location of the tool file is specified in the ini file. See section 5.3.8 for more details.

A tool file may have a mixture of “mill format” and “lathe format” lines, though usually the “lathe format” lines are only required for lathe-type tooling.

12.4.1 Mill Format Tool Files

The “mill format” of a tool file is shown in Table 12.1.

Table 12.1: Sample Tool File (mill format)

Pocket	FMS	TLO	Diameter	Comment
1	1	2.0	1.0	
2	2	1.0	0.2	
5	5	1.5	0.25	endmill
10	10	2.4	-0.3	for testing

Each line has five entries. The first four entries are required. The last entry (a comment) is optional. It makes reading easier if the entries are arranged in columns, as shown in the table, but the only format requirement is that there be at least one space or tab after each of the first three entries on a line and a space, tab, or newline at the end of the fourth entry. The meanings of the columns and the type of data to be put in each are as follows.

The “Pocket” column contains an unsigned integer which represents the pocket number (slot number) of the tool carousel slot in which the tool is placed. The entries in this column must all be different.

The “FMS” column contains an unsigned integer which represents a code number for the tool. The user may use any code for any tool, as long as the codes are unsigned integers. This is typically the same as the pocket number.

The “TLO” column contains a real number which represents the tool length offset. This number will be used if tool length offsets are being used and this pocket is selected. This is normally a positive real number, but it may be zero or any other number if it is never to be used.

The “Diameter” column contains a real number. This number is used only if tool radius compensation is turned on using this pocket. If the programmed path during compensation is the edge of the material being cut, this should be a positive real number representing the measured diameter of the tool. If the programmed path during compensation is the path of a tool whose diameter is nominal, this should be a small number (positive, negative, or zero) representing the difference between the measured diameter of the tool and the nominal diameter. If cutter radius compensation is not used with a tool, it does not matter what number is in this column.

The “Comment” column may optionally be used to describe the tool. Any type of description is OK. This column is for the benefit of human readers only.

12.4.2 Lathe Format Tool Files

The “lathe format” of a tool file is shown in Table 12.2.

Table 12.2: Sample Tool File (lathe format)

Pocket	FMS	ZOFFSET	XOFFSET	DIA	FRONTANGLE	BACKANGLE	ORIENTATION	Comment
1	1	0.0	0.0	0.1	95.0	155.0	1	
2	2	0.5	0.5	0.1	120	60	6	

The Pocket, FMS, DIA and Comment fields are as for mill format tool files. The ZOFFSET field is the same as the TLO field of mill format tool files.

The XOFFSET field gives an offset for the X coordinate when tool length offsets are in effect.

The ORIENTATION field gives the orientation of the lathe tool, as illustrated in 12.1. The red cross is the controlled point. See 12.2.3.

The FRONTANGLE and BACKANGLE fields are used by some user interfaces to display a fancy representation of the lathe tool.

12.5 Parameters

In the RS274/NGC language view, a machining center maintains an array of 5400 numerical parameters. Many of them have specific uses. The parameter array persists over time, even if the machining center is powered down. EMC2 uses a parameter file to ensure persistence and gives the Interpreter the responsibility for maintaining the file. The Interpreter reads the file when it starts up, and writes the file when it exits.

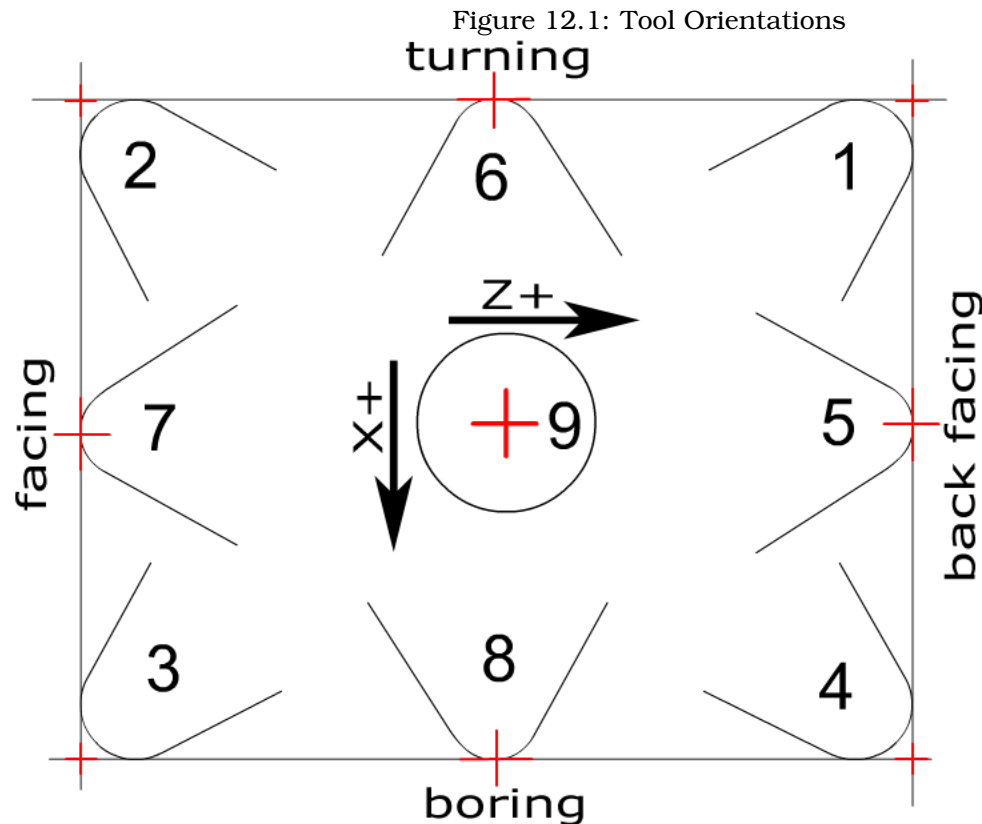


Table 12.3: Parameters Used by the RS274NGC Interpreter

Parameter Number(s)	Meaning
5061-5070	Result of "G38.2" Probe
5161-5169	"G28" Home
5181-5189	"G30" Home
5211-5219	"G92" offset
5220	Coordinate System Number
5221-5229	Coordinate System 1
5241-5249	Coordinate System 2
5261-5269	Coordinate System 3
5281-5289	Coordinate System 4
5301-5309	Coordinate System 5
5321-5329	Coordinate System 6
5341-5349	Coordinate System 7
5361-5369	Coordinate System 8
5381-5389	Coordinate System 9
5399	Result of M66 - Check or wait for input

The format of a parameter file is shown in Table 12.4. The file consists of any number of header lines, followed by one blank line, followed by any number of lines of data. The Interpreter skips over the header lines. It is important that there be exactly one blank line (with no spaces or tabs, even) before the data. The header line shown in Table 12.4 describes the data columns, so it is suggested (but not required) that that line always be included in the header.

The Interpreter reads only the first two columns of the table. The third column, "Comment," is not read by the Interpreter.

Each line of the file contains the index number of a parameter in the first column and the value to

which that parameter should be set in the second column. The value is represented as a double-precision floating point number inside the Interpreter, but a decimal point is not required in the file. All of the parameters shown in Table 12.4 are required parameters and must be included in any parameter file, except that any parameter representing a rotational axis value for an unused axis may be omitted. An error will be signalled if any required parameter is missing. A parameter file may include any other parameter, as long as its number is in the range 1 to 5400. The parameter numbers must be arranged in ascending order. An error will be signalled if not. Any parameter included in the file read by the Interpreter will be included in the file it writes as it exits. The original file is saved as a backup file when the new file is written. Comments are not preserved when the file is written.

Table 12.4: Parameter File Format

Parameter Number	Parameter Value	Comment
5161	0.0	G28 Home X
5162	0.0	G28 Home Y

12.6 Coordinate Systems

In the RS274/NGC language view, a machining center has an absolute coordinate system and nine program coordinate systems.

You can set the offsets of the nine program coordinate systems using `G10 L2 Pn` (`n` is the number of the coordinate system) with values for the axes in terms of the absolute coordinate system. See Section 14.6.

You can select one of the nine systems by using `G54`, `G55`, `G56`, `G57`, `G58`, `G59`, `G59.1`, `G59.2`, or `G59.3` (see Section 14.14). It is not possible to select the absolute coordinate system directly.

You can offset the current coordinate system using `G92` or `G92.3`. This offset will then apply to all nine program coordinate systems. This offset may be cancelled with `G92.1` or `G92.2`. See Section 14.19.

You can make straight moves in the absolute machine coordinate system by using `G53` with either `G0` or `G1`. See Section 14.13.

Data for coordinate systems is stored in parameters.

During initialization, the coordinate system is selected that is specified by parameter 5220. A value of 1 means the first coordinate system (the one `G54` activates), a value of 2 means the second coordinate system (the one `G55` activates), and so on. It is an error for the value of parameter 5220 to be anything but a whole number between one and nine.

Chapter 13

Language Overview

The RS274/NGC language is based on lines of code. Each line (also called a “block”) may include commands to a machining center to do several different things. Lines of code may be collected in a file to make a program.

A typical line of code consists of an optional line number at the beginning followed by one or more “words.” A word consists of a letter followed by a number (or something that evaluates to a number). A word may either give a command or provide an argument to a command. For example, “G1 X3” is a valid line of code with two words. “G1” is a command meaning “move in a straight line at the programmed feed rate”, and “X3” provides an argument value (the value of X should be 3 at the end of the move). Most RS274/NGC commands start with either G or M (for General and Miscellaneous). The words for these commands are called “G codes” and “M codes.”

The RS274/NGC language has no indicator for the start of a program. The Interpreter, however, deals with files. A single program may be in a single file, or a program may be spread across several files. A file may demarcated with percents in the following way. The first non-blank line of a file may contain nothing but a percent sign, “%”, possibly surrounded by white space, and later in the file (normally at the end of the file) there may be a similar line. Demarcating a file with percents is optional if the file has an M2 or M30 in it, but is required if not. An error will be signalled if a file has a percent line at the beginning but not at the end. The useful contents of a file demarcated by percents stop after the second percent line. Anything after that is ignored.

The RS274/NGC language has two commands (M2 or M30), either of which ends a program. A program may end before the end of a file. Lines of a file that occur after the end of a program are not to be executed. The interpreter does not even read them.

13.1 Format of a line

A permissible line of input RS274/NGC code consists of the following, in order, with the restriction that there is a maximum (currently 256) to the number of characters allowed on a line.

1. an optional block delete character, which is a slash “/” .
2. an optional line number.
3. any number of words, parameter settings, and comments.
4. an end of line marker (carriage return or line feed or both).

Any input not explicitly allowed is illegal and will cause the Interpreter to signal an error.

Spaces and tabs are allowed anywhere on a line of code and do not change the meaning of the line, except inside comments. This makes some strange-looking input legal. The line “g0x +0. 12 34y 7” is equivalent to “g0 x+0.1234 y7”, for example.

Blank lines are allowed in the input. They are to be ignored.

Input is case insensitive, except in comments, i.e., any letter outside a comment may be in upper or lower case without changing the meaning of a line.

13.2 Line Number

A line number is the letter N followed by an integer (with no sign) between 0 and 99999 written with no more than five digits (000009 is not OK, for example). Line numbers may be repeated or used out of order, although normal practice is to avoid such usage. Line numbers may also be skipped, and that is normal practice. A line number is not required to be used, but must be in the proper place if used.

13.3 Word

A word is a letter other than N followed by a real value.

Words may begin with any of the letters shown in Table 13.1. The table includes N for completeness, even though, as defined above, line numbers are not words. Several letters (I, J, K, L, P, R) may have different meanings in different contexts. Letters which refer to axis names are not valid on a machine which does not have the corresponding axis.

13.3.1 Number

The following rules are used for (explicit) numbers. In these rules a digit is a single character between 0 and 9.

- A number consists of (1) an optional plus or minus sign, followed by (2) zero to many digits, followed, possibly, by (3) one decimal point, followed by (4) zero to many digits - provided that there is at least one digit somewhere in the number.
- There are two kinds of numbers: integers and decimals. An integer does not have a decimal point in it; a decimal does.
- Numbers may have any number of digits, subject to the limitation on line length. Only about seventeen significant figures will be retained, however (enough for all known applications).
- A non-zero number with no sign as the first character is assumed to be positive.

Notice that initial (before the decimal point and the first non-zero digit) and trailing (after the decimal point and the last non-zero digit) zeros are allowed but not required. A number written with initial or trailing zeros will have the same value when it is read as if the extra zeros were not there.

Numbers used for specific purposes in RS274/NGC are often restricted to some finite set of values or some to some range of values. In many uses, decimal numbers must be close to integers; this includes the values of indexes (for parameters and carousel slot numbers, for example), M codes, and G codes multiplied by ten. A decimal number which is supposed to be close to an integer is considered close enough if it is within 0.0001 of an integer.

Table 13.1: Words and their meanings

Letter	Meaning
A	A axis of machine
B	B axis of machine
C	C axis of machine
D	Tool radius compensation number
F	Feed rate
G	General function (See table 5)
H	Tool length offset index
I	X offset for arcs and G87 canned cycles
J	Y offset for arcs and G87 canned cycles
K	Z offset for arcs and G87 canned cycles. Spindle-Motion Ratio for G33 synchronized movements.
M	Miscellaneous function (See table 7)
N	Line number
P	Dwell time in canned cycles and with G4. Key used with G10.
Q	Feed increment in G83 canned cycle
R	Arc radius or canned cycle plane
S	Spindle speed
T	Tool selection
U	U axis of machine
V	V axis of machine
W	W axis of machine
X	X axis of machine
Y	Y axis of machine
Z	Z axis of machine

13.3.2 Numbered Parameters

A numbered parameter is the pound character # followed by an integer between 1 and 5399. The parameter is referred to by this integer, and its value is whatever number is stored in the parameter.

A value is stored in a parameter with the = operator; for example "#3 = 15" means "set parameter 3 to 15." A parameter setting does not take effect until after all parameter values on the same line have been found. For example, if parameter 3 has been previously set to 15 and the line "#3=6 G1 x#3" is interpreted, a straight move to a point where x equals 15 will occur and the value of parameter 3 will be 6.

The # character takes precedence over other operations, so that, for example, "#1+2" means the number found by adding 2 to the value of parameter 1, not the value found in parameter 3. Of course, #[1+2] does mean the value found in parameter 3. The # character may be repeated; for example ##2 means the value of the parameter whose index is the (integer) value of parameter 2.

13.3.3 Named Parameters

Named parameters work like numbered parameters but are easier to read. All parameter names are converted to lower case and have spaces and tabs removed. Named parameters must be enclosed with < > marks.

#<named parameter here> is a local named parameter. By default, a named parameter is local to the scope in which it is assigned. You can't access a local parameter outside of its subroutine - this is so that two subroutines can use the same parameter names without fear of one subroutine overwriting the values in another.

#<_global named parameter here> is a global named parameter. They are accessible from within called subroutines and may set values within subroutines that are accessible to the caller. As far as scope is concerned, they act just like regular numeric parameters. They are not stored in files.

Examples:

- Declaration of named global variable

```
#<_endmill_dia> = 0.049
```

- Reference to previously declared global variable

```
#<_endmill_rad> = [#<_endmill_dia>/2.0]
```

- Mixed literal and named params

```
o100 call [0.0] [0.0] [#<_inside_cutout>-#<_endmill_dia>] [#<_Zcut>] [#<_feedrate>]
```

Notes:

The global parameters `_a`, `_b`, `_c`, ... `_z` have been reserved for special use. In the future, they may provide access to the last Aword, Bword, Cword, etc.

13.3.4 Expressions

An expression is a set of characters starting with a left bracket `[` and ending with a balancing right bracket `]`. In between the brackets are numbers, parameter values, mathematical operations, and other expressions. An expression is evaluated to produce a number. The expressions on a line are evaluated when the line is read, before anything on the line is executed. An example of an expression is `[1 + acos[0] - [#3 ** [4.0/2]]]`.

13.3.5 Binary Operators

Binary operators only appear inside expressions. There are four basic mathematical operations: addition (+), subtraction (-), multiplication (*), and division (/). There are three logical operations: non-exclusive or (OR), exclusive or (XOR), and logical and (AND). The eighth operation is the modulus operation (MOD). The ninth operation is the “power” operation (**) of raising the number on the left of the operation to the power on the right. The relational operators are equality (EQ), inequality (NE), strictly greater than (GT), greater than or equal to (GE), strictly less than (LT), and less than or equal to (LE).

The binary operations are divided into several groups according to their precedence. (see table 13.2) If operations in different precedence groups are strung together (for example in the expression `[2.0 / 3 * 1.5 - 5.5 / 11.0]`), operations in a higher group are to be performed before operations in a lower group. If an expression contains more than one operation from the same group (such as the first `/` and `*` in the example), the operation on the left is performed first. Thus, the example is equivalent to: `[[[2.0 / 3] * 1.5] - [5.5 / 11.0]]`, which is equivalent to `[1.0 - 0.5]`, which is 0.5.

The logical operations and modulus are to be performed on any real numbers, not just on integers. The number zero is equivalent to logical false, and any non-zero number is equivalent to logical true.

Table 13.2: Operator Precedence

Operators	Precedence
**	<i>highest</i>
* / MOD	
+ -	
EQ NE GT GE LT LE	
AND OR XOR	<i>lowest</i>

13.3.6 Functions

A function is either “ATAN” followed by one expression divided by another expression (for example “ATAN[2]/[1+3]”) or any other function name followed by an expression (for example “SIN[90]”). The available functions are shown in table 13.3. Arguments to unary operations which take angle measures (COS, SIN, and TAN) are in degrees. Values returned by unary operations which return angle measures (ACOS, ASIN, and ATAN) are also in degrees.

The FIX operation rounds towards the left (less positive or more negative) on a number line, so that FIX[2.8] = 2 and FIX[-2.8] = -3, for example. The FUP operation rounds towards the right (more positive or less negative) on a number line; FUP[2.8] = 3 and FUP[-2.8] = -2, for example.

Table 13.3: Functions

Function Name	Function result
ATAN[Y]/[X]	Four quadrant tangent
ATAN[arg]	Two quadrant tangent
ABS[arg]	Absolute value
ACOS[arg]	Inverse cosine
ASIN[arg]	Inverse sine
ATAN[arg]	Inverse tangent
COS[arg]	Cosine
EXP[arg]	e raised to the given power
FIX[arg]	Round down to integer
FUP[arg]	Round up to integer
ROUND[arg]	Round to nearest integer
LN[arg]	Base-e logarithm
SIN[arg]	Sine
SQRT[arg]	Square Root
TAN[arg]	Tangent

13.4 Comments

Printable characters and white space inside parentheses is a comment. A left parenthesis always starts a comment. The comment ends at the first right parenthesis found thereafter. Once a left parenthesis is placed on a line, a matching right parenthesis must appear before the end of the line. Comments may not be nested; it is an error if a left parenthesis is found after the start of a comment and before the end of the comment. Here is an example of a line containing a comment: “G80 M5 (stop motion)”. Comments do not cause a machining center to do anything.

13.4.1 Messages

A comment contains a message if “MSG,” appears after the left parenthesis and before any other printing characters. Variants of “MSG,” which include white space and lower case characters are

allowed. The rest of the characters before the right parenthesis are considered to be a message. Messages should be displayed on the message display device. Comments not containing messages need not be displayed there.

13.4.2 Probe Logging

A comment can also be used to specify a file for the results of G38.x probing. See section [14.10](#).

Often, general logging is more useful than probe logging. Using general logging, the format of the output data can be controlled.

13.4.3 General logging

13.4.3.1 (LOGOPEN,filename)

Opens the named log file. If the file already exists, it is truncated.

13.4.3.2 (LOGCLOSE)

If the log file is open, it is closed.

13.4.3.3 (LOG,...)

The message “...” is expanded as described below and then written to the log file if it is open.

13.4.4 Debugging messages

Comments that look like: (debug, rest of comment) are the same as comments like (msg, rest of comment) with the addition of special handling for parameters.

Comments that look like: (print, rest of comment) are output to stderr with special handling for parameters.

13.4.5 Parameters in special comments

In the DEBUG, PRINT and LOG comments, the values of parameters in the message are expanded.

For example: to print a named global variable to stderr (the default console window) add a line to your gcode like...

```
(print,endmill dia = #<_endmill_dia>)
```

Inside the above types of comments, sequences like #123 are replaced by the value of the parameter 123. Sequences like #<named parameter> are replaced by the value of the named parameter. Remember that named parameters will have whitespace removed from them. So, #<named parameter> is the same as #<namedparameter>.

13.5 Repeated Items

A line may have any number of G words, but two G words from the same modal group (see Section 13.8) may not appear on the same line.

A line may have zero to four M words. Two M words from the same modal group may not appear on the same line.

For all other legal letters, a line may have only one word beginning with that letter.

If a parameter setting of the same parameter is repeated on a line, “#3=15 #3=6”, for example, only the last setting will take effect. It is silly, but not illegal, to set the same parameter twice on the same line.

If more than one comment appears on a line, only the last one will be used; each of the other comments will be read and its format will be checked, but it will be ignored thereafter. It is expected that putting more than one comment on a line will be very rare.

13.6 Item order

The three types of item whose order may vary on a line (as given at the beginning of this section) are word, parameter setting, and comment. Imagine that these three types of item are divided into three groups by type.

The first group (the words) may be reordered in any way without changing the meaning of the line.

If the second group (the parameter settings) is reordered, there will be no change in the meaning of the line unless the same parameter is set more than once. In this case, only the last setting of the parameter will take effect. For example, after the line “#3=15 #3=6” has been interpreted, the value of parameter 3 will be 6. If the order is reversed to “#3=6 #3=15” and the line is interpreted, the value of parameter 3 will be 15.

If the third group (the comments) contains more than one comment and is reordered, only the last comment will be used.

If each group is kept in order or reordered without changing the meaning of the line, then the three groups may be interleaved in any way without changing the meaning of the line. For example, the line “g40 g1 #3=15 (f00) #4=-7.0” has five items and means exactly the same thing in any of the 120 possible orders (such as “#4=-7.0 g1 #3=15 g40 (f00)”) for the five items.

13.7 Commands and Machine Modes

In RS274/NGC, many commands cause a machining center to change from one mode to another, and the mode stays active until some other command changes it implicitly or explicitly. Such commands are called “modal”. For example, if coolant is turned on, it stays on until it is explicitly turned off. The G codes for motion are also modal. If a G1 (straight move) command is given on one line, for example, it will be executed again on the next line if one or more axis words is available on the line, unless an explicit command is given on that next line using the axis words or cancelling motion.

“Non-modal” codes have effect only on the lines on which they occur. For example, G4 (dwell) is non-modal.

13.8 Modal Groups

Modal commands are arranged in sets called “modal groups”, and only one member of a modal group may be in force at any given time. In general, a modal group contains commands for which

it is logically impossible for two members to be in effect at the same time - like measure in inches vs. measure in millimeters. A machining center may be in many modes at the same time, with one mode from each modal group being in effect. The modal groups are shown in Table 13.4.

Table 13.4: Modal Groups

Modal Group Meaning	Member Words
Motion ("Group 1")	G0 G1 G2 G3 G33 G38.x G80 G81 G82 G83 G84 G85 G86 G87 G88 G89
Plane selection	G17 G18 G19
Distance Mode	G90 G91
Feed Rate Mode	G93, G94
Units	G20, G21
Cutter Radius Compensation	G40, G41, G42, G41.1, G42.1
Tool Length Offset	G43, G43.1, G49
Return Mode in Canned Cycles	G98, G99
Coordinate System Selection	G54, G55, G56, G57, G58, G59, G59.1, G59.2, G59.3
Stopping	M0, M1, M2, M30, M60
Tool Change	M6
Spindle Turning	M3, M4, M5
Coolant	M7, M8, M9. Special case: M7 and M8 may be active at the same time
Override Switches	M48, M49
Flow Control	O-
Non-modal codes ("Group 0")	G4, G10, G28, G30, G53 G92, G92.1, G92.2, G92.3 M100 to M199

For several modal groups, when a machining center is ready to accept commands, one member of the group must be in effect. There are default settings for these modal groups. When the machining center is turned on or otherwise re-initialized, the default values are automatically in effect.

Group 1, the first group on the table, is a group of G codes for motion. One of these is always in effect. That one is called the current motion mode.

It is an error to put a G-code from group 1 and a G-code from group 0 on the same line if both of them use axis words. If an axis word-using G-code from group 1 is implicitly in effect on a line (by having been activated on an earlier line), and a group 0 G-code that uses axis words appears on the line, the activity of the group 1 G-code is suspended for that line. The axis word-using G-codes from group 0 are G10, G28, G30, and G92.

It is an error to include any unrelated words on a line with O- flow control.

Chapter 14

G Codes

G codes of the RS274/NGC language are shown in Table 5 and described following that.

In the command prototypes, the hyphen (-) stands for a real value. As described earlier, a real value may be (1) an explicit number, 4, for example, (2) an expression, [2+2], for example, (3) a parameter value, #88, for example, or (4) a unary function value, `acos[0]`, for example.

In most cases, if axis words (any or all of X-, Y-, Z-, A-, B-, C-, U-, V-, W-) are given, they specify a destination point. Axis numbers are in the currently active coordinate system, unless explicitly described as being in the absolute coordinate system. Where axis words are optional, any omitted axes will have their current value. Any items in the command prototypes not explicitly described as optional are required. It is an error if a required item is omitted. In prototypes, this will be written as *axes*.

In the prototypes, the values following letters are often given as explicit numbers. Unless stated otherwise, the explicit numbers can be real values. For example, `G10 L2` could equally well be written `G[2*5] L[1+1]`. If the value of parameter 100 were 2, `G10 L#100` would also mean the same. Using real values which are not explicit numbers as just shown in the examples is rarely useful.

If L- is written in a prototype the “-” will often be referred to as the “L number”. Similarly the “-” in H- may be called the “H number”, and so on for any other letter.

14.1 G0: Rapid Linear Motion

For rapid linear motion, program `G0 axes`, where all the axis words are optional, except that at least one must be used. The `G0` is optional if the current motion mode is `G0`. This will produce coordinated linear motion to the destination point at the current traverse rate (or slower if the machine will not go that fast). It is expected that cutting will not take place when a `G0` command is executing.

It is an error if:

- all axis words are omitted.

If cutter radius compensation is active, the motion will differ from the above; see Section 20.4. If `G53` is programmed on the same line, the motion will also differ; see Section 14.13.

If a `G0` motion only moves rotational axes, and the target position for those axes is in the range from -360 to 360 degrees, then the motion is modified so that each rotational axis actually rotates less than one full revolution. Example:

```
N1 G0 X1 A[20*360]
N2 G0 A0
```


After line N1, the position of the A axis is 7200 degrees. 7200 degrees is the same as zero degrees on a rotational axis, so the rapid linear motion specified on line N2 actually produces no motion.

14.2 G1: Linear Motion at Feed Rate

For linear motion at feed rate (for cutting or not), program G1 *axes*, where all the axis words are optional, except that at least one must be used. The G1 is optional if the current motion mode is G1. This will produce coordinated linear motion to the destination point at the current feed rate (or slower if the machine will not go that fast).

It is an error if:

- all axis words are omitted.

If cutter radius compensation is active, the motion will differ from the above; see Section 20.4. If G53 is programmed on the same line, the motion will also differ; see Section 14.13.

14.3 G2, G3: Arc at Feed Rate

A circular or helical arc is specified using either G2 (clockwise arc) or G3 (counterclockwise arc). The axis of the circle or helix must be parallel to the X, Y, or Z-axis of the machine coordinate system. The axis (or, equivalently, the plane perpendicular to the axis) is selected with G17 (Z-axis, XY-plane), G18 (Y-axis, XZ-plane), or G19 (X-axis, YZ-plane). If the arc is circular, it lies in a plane parallel to the selected plane.

If a line of RS274/NGC code makes an arc and includes rotational axis motion, the rotational axes turn at a constant rate so that the rotational motion starts and finishes when the XYZ motion starts and finishes. Lines of this sort are hardly ever programmed.

If cutter radius compensation is active, the motion will differ from what is described here. See Section 20.4.

Two formats are allowed for specifying an arc: Center Format and Radius Format.

14.3.1 Center format arcs (preferred format)

In the center format, the coordinates of the end point of the arc in the selected plane are specified along with the offsets of the center of the arc from the current location. In this format, it is OK if the end point of the arc is the same as the current point. It is an error if:

- When the arc is projected on the selected plane, the distance from the current point to the center differs from the distance from the end point to the center by more than 0.0002 inch (if inches are being used) or 0.002 millimeter (if millimeters are being used).

When the XY-plane is selected, program G2 *axes I- J-* (or use G3 instead of G2). The axis words are all optional except that at least one of X and Y must be used. I and J are the offsets from the current location (in the X and Y directions, respectively) of the center of the circle. I and J are optional except that at least one of the two must be used. If only one is specified, the value of the other is taken as 0. It is an error if:

- X and Y are both omitted
- or I and J are both omitted.

When the XZ-plane is selected, program `G2 axes I- K-` (or use `G3` instead of `G2`). The axis words are all optional except that at least one of `X` and `Z` must be used. `I` and `K` are the offsets from the current location (in the `X` and `Z` directions, respectively) of the center of the circle. `I` and `K` are optional except that at least one of the two must be used. If only one is specified, the value of the other is taken as 0. It is an error if:

- `X` and `Z` are both omitted,
- or `I` and `K` are both omitted.

When the YZ-plane is selected, program `G2 axes J- K-` (or use `G3` instead of `G2`). The axis words are all optional except that at least one of `Y` and `Z` must be used. `J` and `K` are the offsets from the current location (in the `Y` and `Z` directions, respectively) of the center of the circle. `J` and `K` are optional except that at least one of the two must be used. If only one is specified, the value of the other is taken as 0. It is an error if:

- `Y` and `Z` are both omitted
- or `J` and `K` are both omitted.

Here is an example of a center format command to mill an arc: `G17 G2 x10 y16 i3 j4 z9`.

That means to make a clockwise (as viewed from the positive `z`-axis) circular or helical arc whose axis is parallel to the `Z`-axis, ending where `X=10`, `Y=16`, and `Z=9`, with its center offset in the `X` direction by 3 units from the current `X` location and offset in the `Y` direction by 4 units from the current `Y` location. If the current location has `X=7`, `Y=7` at the outset, the center will be at `X=10`, `Y=11`. If the starting value of `Z` is 9, this is a circular arc; otherwise it is a helical arc. The radius of this arc would be 5.

In the center format, the radius of the arc is not specified, but it may be found easily as the distance from the center of the circle to either the current point or the end point of the arc.

14.3.2 Radius format arcs (discouraged format)

In the radius format, the coordinates of the end point of the arc in the selected plane are specified along with the radius of the arc. Program `G2 axes R-` (or use `G3` instead of `G2`). `R` is the radius. The axis words are all optional except that at least one of the two words for the axes in the selected plane must be used. The `R` number is the radius. A positive radius indicates that the arc turns through less than 180 degrees, while a negative radius indicates a turn of more than 180 degrees. If the arc is helical, the value of the end point of the arc on the coordinate axis parallel to the axis of the helix is also specified.

It is an error if:

- both of the axis words for the axes of the selected plane are omitted
- the end point of the arc is the same as the current point.

It is not good practice to program radius format arcs that are nearly full circles or nearly semicircles because a small change in the location of the end point will produce a much larger change in the location of the center of the circle (and, hence, the middle of the arc). The magnification effect is large enough that rounding error in a number can produce out-of-tolerance cuts. For instance, a 1% displacement of the endpoint of a 180 degree arc produced a 7% displacement of the point 90 degrees along the arc. Nearly full circles are even worse. Other size arcs (in the range tiny to 165 degrees or 195 to 345 degrees) are OK.

Here is an example of a radius format command to mill an arc: `G17 G2 x 10 y 15 r 20 z 5`.

That means to make a clockwise (as viewed from the positive `Z`-axis) circular or helical arc whose axis is parallel to the `Z`-axis, ending where `X=10`, `Y=15`, and `Z=5`, with a radius of 20. If the starting value of `Z` is 5, this is an arc of a circle parallel to the `XY`-plane; otherwise it is a helical arc.

14.4 G33, G33.1: Spindle-Synchronized Motion

For spindle-synchronized motion in one direction, code `G33 X- Y- Z- K-` where K gives the distance moved in XYZ for each revolution of the spindle. For instance, if starting at Z=0, `G33 Z-1 K.0625` produces a 1 inch motion in Z over 16 revolutions of the spindle. This command might be part of a program to produce a 16TPI thread.

For rigid tapping (spindle synchronized motion with return) code `G33.1 X- Y- Z- K-` where K- gives the distance moved for each revolution of the spindle. A rigid tapping move consists of the following sequence:

- A move to the specified coordinate, synchronized with the spindle at the given ratio and starting with a spindle index pulse
- When reaching the endpoint, a command to reverse the spindle (e.g., from 300 RPM clockwise to 300RPM counterclockwise)
- Continued synchronized motion **beyond** the specified end coordinate until the spindle actually stops and reverses
- Continued synchronized motion back to the original coordinate
- When reaching the original coordinate, a command to reverse the spindle a second time (e.g., from 300RPM counterclockwise to 300RPM clockwise)
- Continued synchronized motion **beyond** the original coordinate until the spindle actually stops and reverses
- An **unsynchronized** move back to the original coordinate.

All spindle-synchronized motions wait for spindle index, so multiple passes line up. `G33` moves end at the programmed endpoint; `G33.1` moves end at the original coordinate.

All the axis words are optional, except that at least one must be used.

It is an error if:

- all axis words are omitted.
- the spindle is not turning when this command is executed
- the requested linear motion exceeds machine velocity limits due to the spindle speed

14.5 G4: Dwell

For a dwell, program `G4 P-` . This will keep the axes unmoving for the period of time in seconds specified by the P number. It is an error if:

- the P number is negative.

14.6 G10: Set Coordinate System Data

The RS274/NGC language view of coordinate systems is described in Section [12.6](#).

To set the coordinate values for the origin of a coordinate system, program G10 L2 P- axes, where the P number must evaluate to an integer in the range 1 to 9 (corresponding to G54 to G59.3) and all axis words are optional. The coordinates of the origin of the coordinate system specified by the P number are reset to the coordinate values given (in terms of the absolute coordinate system). Only those coordinates for which an axis word is included on the line will be reset.

It is an error if:

- the P number does not evaluate to an integer in the range 1 to 9.

If origin offsets (made by G92 or G92.3) were in effect before G10 is used, they will continue to be in effect afterwards.

The coordinate system whose origin is set by a G10 command may be active or inactive at the time the G10 is executed.

Example: G10 L2 P1 x 3.5 y 17.2 sets the origin of the first coordinate system (the one selected by G54) to a point where X is 3.5 and Y is 17.2 (in absolute coordinates). The Z coordinate of the origin (and the coordinates for any rotational axes) are whatever those coordinates of the origin were before the line was executed.

14.7 G17, G18, G19: Plane Selection

Program G17 to select the XY-plane, G18 to select the XZ-plane, or G19 to select the YZ-plane. The effects of having a plane selected are discussed in Section [14.3](#) and Section [14.18](#)

14.8 G20, G21: Length Units

Program G20 to use inches for length units. Program G21 to use millimeters.

It is usually a good idea to program either G20 or G21 near the beginning of a program before any motion occurs, and not to use either one anywhere else in the program. It is the responsibility of the user to be sure all numbers are appropriate for use with the current length units.

14.9 G28, G30: Return to Predefined Absolute Position

Two positions are defined (by parameters 5161-5166 for G28 and parameters 5181-5186 for G30). The parameter values are in terms of the absolute coordinate system and the machine's native coordinate system.

G28 and G30 do not use home switches to find the predefined position. They merely command a rapid motion to the position defined by the parameters, assuming that the machine has already been homed.

To return one or more axes to the predefined position by way of the programmed position, program G28 axes (or use G30). The path is made by a traverse move from the current position to the programmed position, followed by a traverse move of the named axes to the predefined position.

To return all axes to the predefined position without an intermediate position, program G28 or G30 without any axis words.

It is an error if :

- Radius compensation is turned on

14.10 G38.x: Straight Probe

Program `G38.2 axes`, `G38.3 axes`, `G38.4 axes`, or `G38.5 axes` to perform a straight probe operation. The axis words are optional, except that at least one of them must be used. The tool in the spindle must be a probe.

It is an error if:

- the current point is the same as the programmed point.
- no axis word is used
- cutter radius compensation is enabled
- the feed rate is zero
- the probe is already in the target state

In response to this command, the machine moves the controlled point (which should be at the end of the probe tip) in a straight line at the current feed rate toward the programmed point. In inverse time feed mode, the feed rate is such that the whole motion from the current point to the programmed point would take the specified time. The move stops when the programmed point is reached, or when the requested change in the probe input takes place¹. Table 14.1 shows the meaning of the various probing codes.

Table 14.1: Probing codes

Code	Target state	Direction	Signal Error
G38.2	Contact	Toward workpiece	Yes
G38.3	Contact	Toward workpiece	No
G38.4	No Contact	Away from workpiece	Yes
G38.5	No Contact	Away from workpiece	No

After successful probing, parameters 5061 to 5069 will be set to the coordinates of the location of the controlled point at the time the probe changed state. After unsuccessful probing, they are set to the coordinates of the programmed point. Parameter 5070 is set to 1 if the probe succeeded and 0 if the probe failed. If the probe failed, G38.2 and G38.4 will signal an error.

A comment of the form `(PROBEOPEN filename.txt)` will open `filename.txt` and store the 9-number coordinate of each successful straight probe in it. The file must be closed with `(PROBECLOSE)`.

14.11 G40, G41, G42, G41.1, G42.1: Cutter Radius Compensation.

To turn cutter radius compensation off, program `G40`. It is OK to turn compensation off when it is already off.

Cutter radius compensation may be performed only if the XY-plane is active.

The behavior of the machining center when cutter radius compensation is on is described in Section 20.4

¹Actually, the movement continues beyond the “probe state changed” point due to machine acceleration constraints.

14.11.1 Cutter Radius Compensation from Tool Table

To turn cutter radius compensation on left (i.e., the cutter stays to the left of the programmed path when the tool radius is positive), program G41 D-. To turn cutter radius compensation on right (i.e., the cutter stays to the right of the programmed path when the tool radius is positive), program G42 D-. The D word is optional; if there is no D word, the radius of the tool currently in the spindle will be used. If used, the D number should normally be the slot number of the tool in the spindle, although this is not required. It is OK for the D number to be zero; a radius value of zero will be used.

It is an error if:

- the D number is not an integer, is negative or is larger than the number of carousel slots,
- the YZ plane is active,
- or cutter radius compensation is commanded to turn on when it is already on.

14.11.2 Dynamic Cutter Radius Compensation

To turn cutter radius compensation on left, program G41.1 D- L-. To turn cutter compensation on right, program G42.1 D- L-. The D word specifies the cutter diameter. The L word specifies the cutter orientation, and defaults to 0 if unspecified.

It is an error if:

- the yz plane is active,
- the L number is not in the range from 0 to 9 inclusive.
- or cutter compensation is commanded to turn on when it is already on

14.12 G43, G43.1, G49: Tool Length Offsets

14.12.1 G43, G43.1: Activate Tool length compensation

G43 and G43.1 change subsequent motions by offsetting the Z and/or X coordinates by the length of the tool. G43 and G43.1 do not cause any motion. The next time a compensated axis is moved, that axis's endpoint is the compensated location.

14.12.1.1 G43: Offsets from tool table

To use a tool length offset from the tool table, program G43 H-, where the H number is the desired index in the tool table. The H number will typically be, but does not have to be, the same as the slot number of the tool currently in the spindle. It is OK for the H number to be zero; an offset value of zero will be used.

It is an error if:

- the H number is not an integer, is negative, or is larger than the number of carousel slots.

14.12.1.2 G43.1: Dynamic tool compensation

To use a tool length offset from the program, use `G43.1 I- K-`, where `I-` gives the X tool offset (for lathes) and `K-` gives the Z tool offset (for lathes and mills).

It is an error if:

- motion is commanded on the same line as `G43.1`

14.12.2 G49: Cancel tool length compensation

To use no tool length offset, program `G49`.

It is OK to program using the same offset already in use. It is also OK to program using no tool length offset if none is currently being used.

14.13 G53: Move in absolute coordinates

For linear motion to a point expressed in absolute coordinates, program `G1 G53 X- Y- Z- A- B- C-` (or use `G0` instead of `G1`), where all the axis words are optional, except that at least one must be used. The `G0` or `G1` is optional if it is the current motion mode. `G53` is not modal and must be programmed on each line on which it is intended to be active. This will produce coordinated linear motion to the programmed point. If `G1` is active, the speed of motion is the current feed rate (or slower if the machine will not go that fast). If `G0` is active, the speed of motion is the current traverse rate (or slower if the machine will not go that fast).

It is an error if:

- `G53` is used without `G0` or `G1` being active,
- or `G53` is used while cutter radius compensation is on.

See Section [12.6](#) for an overview of coordinate systems.

14.14 G54 to G59.3: Select Coordinate System

To select coordinate system 1, program `G54`, and similarly for other coordinate systems. The system-number-G-code pairs are: (1-`G54`), (2-`G55`), (3-`G56`), (4-`G57`), (5-`G58`), (6-`G59`), (7-`G59.1`), (8-`G59.2`), and (9-`G59.3`).

It is an error if:

- one of these G-codes is used while cutter radius compensation is on.

See Section [12.6](#) for an overview of coordinate systems.

14.15 G61, G61.1, G64: Set Path Control Mode

Program `G61` to put the machining center into exact path mode, `G61.1` for exact stop mode, or `G64 P-` for continuous mode with optional tolerance. It is OK to program for the mode that is already active. See Section [12.2.15](#) for a discussion of these modes.

14.16 G80: Cancel Modal Motion

Program G80 to ensure no axis motion will occur. It is an error if:

- Axis words are programmed when G80 is active, unless a modal group 0 G code is programmed which uses axis words.

14.17 G76: Threading Canned Cycle

Program G76 P- Z- I- J- R- K- Q- H- E- L- to perform a threading canned cycle. It is an error if:

- The active plane is not the ZX plane
- Other axis words, such as X- or Y-, are specified
- The R- degression value is less than 1.0.
- All the required words are not specified
- P-, J-, K- or H- is negative
- E- is greater than half the drive line length

The “drive line” is a safe line outside the thread material. The “drive line” goes from the initial location to the Z- value specified with G76. The Z extent of the thread is the same as the drive line.

The “thread pitch”, or distance per revolution, is given by the P- value.

The “thread peak” is given by the I- value, which is an offset from the drive line. Negative I values indicate external threads, and positive I values indicate internal threads. Generally the material has been turned to this size before the G76 cycle.

The “initial cut depth” is given by the J- value. The first threading cut will be J beyond the “thread peak” position. J- is positive, even when I- is negative.

The “full thread depth” is given by the K- value. The final threading cut will be K beyond the “thread peak” position. K- is positive, even when I- is negative.

The “depth degression” is given by the R- value. R1.0 selects constant depth on successive threading passes. R2.0 selects constant area. Values between 1.0 and 2.0 select decreasing depth but increasing area. Values above 2.0 select decreasing area. Beware that unnecessarily high degression values will cause a large number of passes to be used.

The “compound slide angle” Q- is the angle (in degrees) describing to what extent successive passes should be offset along the drive line. This is used to cause one side of the tool to remove more material than the other. A positive Q value causes the leading edge of the tool to cut more heavily. Typical values are 29, 29.5 or 30.

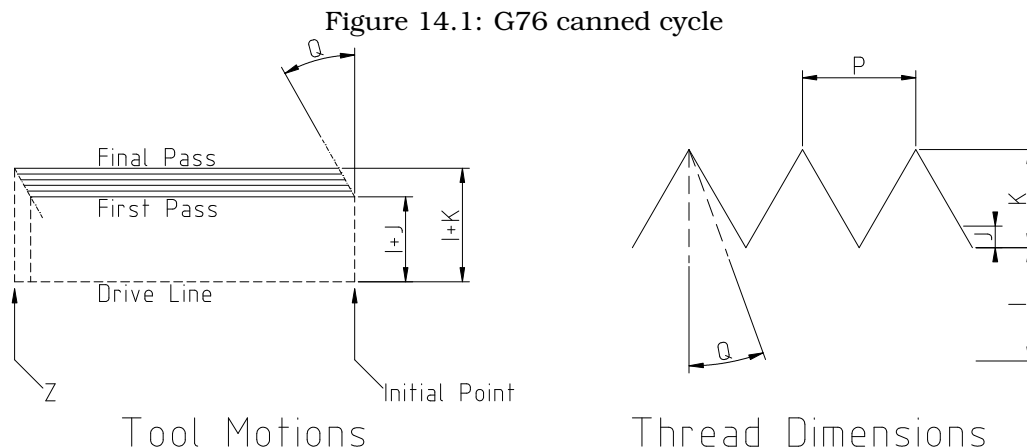
The number of “spring passes” is given by the H- value. Spring passes are additional passes at full thread depth. If no additional passes are desired, program H0.

Tapered entry and exit moves can be programmed using E- and L-. E- gives a distance along the drive line used for the taper. E0.2 will give a taper for the first/last 0.2 length units along the thread. L- is used to specify which ends of the thread get the taper. Program L0 for no taper (the default), L1 for entry taper, L2 for exit taper, or L3 for both entry and exit tapers.

The tool will pause briefly for synchronization before each threading pass, so a relief groove will be required at the entry unless the beginning of the thread is past the end of the material or an entry taper is used.

Unless using an exit taper, the exit move (traverse to original X) is not synchronized to the spindle speed. With a slow spindle, the exit move might take only a small fraction of a revolution. If the spindle speed is increased after several passes are complete, subsequent exit moves will require a larger portion of a revolution, resulting in a very heavy cut during the exit move. This can be avoided by providing a relief groove at the exit, or by not changing the spindle speed while threading.

The sample program `g76.ngc` shows the use of the G76 canned cycle, and can be previewed and executed on any machine using the `sim/lathe.ini` configuration.



14.18 G81 to G89: Canned Cycles

The canned cycles G81 through G89 have been implemented as described in this section. Two examples are given with the description of G81 below.

All canned cycles are performed with respect to the currently selected plane. Any of the three planes (XY, YZ, ZX) may be selected. Throughout this section, most of the descriptions assume the XY-plane has been selected. The behavior is always analogous if the YZ or XZ-plane is selected.

Rotational axis words are allowed in canned cycles, but it is better to omit them. If rotational axis words are used, the numbers must be the same as the current position numbers so that the rotational axes do not move.

All canned cycles use X, Y, R, and Z numbers in the NC code. These numbers are used to determine X, Y, R, and Z positions. The R (usually meaning retract) position is along the axis perpendicular to the currently selected plane (Z-axis for XY-plane, X-axis for YZ-plane, Y-axis for XZ-plane). Some canned cycles use additional arguments.

For canned cycles, we will call a number “sticky” if, when the same cycle is used on several lines of code in a row, the number must be used the first time, but is optional on the rest of the lines. Sticky numbers keep their value on the rest of the lines if they are not explicitly programmed to be different. The R number is always sticky.

In incremental distance mode: when the XY-plane is selected, X, Y, and R numbers are treated as increments to the current position and Z as an increment from the Z-axis position before the move involving Z takes place; when the YZ or XZ-plane is selected, treatment of the axis words is analogous. In absolute distance mode, the X, Y, R, and Z numbers are absolute positions in the current coordinate system.

The L number is optional and represents the number of repeats. $L = 0$ is not allowed. If the repeat feature is used, it is normally used in incremental distance mode, so that the same sequence of motions is repeated in several equally spaced places along a straight line. In absolute distance mode, $L > 1$ means “do the same cycle in the same place several times,” Omitting the L word is equivalent to specifying $L = 1$. The L number is not sticky.

When $L > 1$ in incremental mode with the XY-plane selected, the X and Y positions are determined by adding the given X and Y numbers either to the current X and Y positions (on the first go-around) or to the X and Y positions at the end of the previous go-around (on the repetitions). The R and Z positions do not change during the repeats.

The height of the retract move at the end of each repeat (called “clear Z” in the descriptions below) is determined by the setting of the retract mode: either to the original Z position (if that is above the R position and the retract mode is G98, OLD_Z), or otherwise to the R position. See Section [14.22](#)

It is an error if:

- X, Y, and Z words are all missing during a canned cycle,
- a P number is required and a negative P number is used,
- an L number is used that does not evaluate to a positive integer,
- rotational axis motion is used during a canned cycle,
- inverse time feed rate is active during a canned cycle,
- or cutter radius compensation is active during a canned cycle.

When the XY plane is active, the Z number is sticky, and it is an error if:

- the Z number is missing and the same canned cycle was not already active,
- or the R number is less than the Z number.

When the XZ plane is active, the Y number is sticky, and it is an error if:

- the Y number is missing and the same canned cycle was not already active,
- or the R number is less than the Y number.

When the YZ plane is active, the X number is sticky, and it is an error if:

- the X number is missing and the same canned cycle was not already active,
- or the R number is less than the X number.

14.18.1 Preliminary and In-Between Motion

At the very beginning of the execution of any of the canned cycles, with the XY-plane selected, if the current Z position is below the R position, the Z-axis is traversed to the R position. This happens only once, regardless of the value of L.

In addition, at the beginning of the first cycle and each repeat, the following one or two moves are made

1. a straight traverse parallel to the XY-plane to the given XY-position,
2. a straight traverse of the Z-axis only to the R position, if it is not already at the R position.

If the XZ or YZ plane is active, the preliminary and in-between motions are analogous.

14.18.2 G81: Drilling Cycle

The G81 cycle is intended for drilling. Program G81 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
3. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.

Example 1. Suppose the current position is (1, 2, 3) and the XY-plane has been selected, and the following line of NC code is interpreted.

```
G90 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z1.5 R2.8
```

This calls for absolute distance mode (G90) and OLD_Z retract mode (G98) and calls for the G81 drilling cycle to be performed once. The X number and X position are 4. The Y number and Y position are 5. The Z number and Z position are 1.5. The R number and clear Z are 2.8. Old Z is 3. The following moves take place.

1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (4,5,3)
2. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,2.8)
3. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,1.5)
4. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,3)

Example 2. Suppose the current position is (1, 2, 3) and the XY-plane has been selected, and the following line of NC code is interpreted.

```
G91 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z-0.6 R1.8 L3
```

This calls for incremental distance mode (G91) and OLD_Z retract mode (G98) and calls for the G81 drilling cycle to be repeated three times. The X number is 4, the Y number is 5, the Z number is -0.6 and the R number is 1.8. The initial X position is 5 (=1+4), the initial Y position is 7 (=2+5), the clear Z position is 4.8 (=1.8+3), and the Z position is 4.2 (=4.8-0.6). Old Z is 3.

The first move is a traverse along the Z-axis to (1,2,4.8), since old Z < clear Z.

The first repeat consists of 3 moves.

1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (5,7,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (5,7, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (5,7,4.8)

The second repeat consists of 3 moves. The X position is reset to 9 (=5+4) and the Y position to 12 (=7+5).

1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (9,12,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (9,12, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (9,12,4.8)

The third repeat consists of 3 moves. The X position is reset to 13 (=9+4) and the Y position to 17 (=12+5).

1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (13,17,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (13,17, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (13,17,4.8)

14.18.3 G82: Drilling Cycle with Dwell

The G82 cycle is intended for drilling. Program G82 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L- P-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
3. Dwell for the P number of seconds.
4. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.

14.18.4 G83: Peck Drilling

The G83 cycle (often called peck drilling) is intended for deep drilling or milling with chip breaking. The retracts in this cycle clear the hole of chips and cut off any long stringers (which are common when drilling in aluminum). This cycle takes a Q number which represents a “delta” increment along the Z-axis. Program G83 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L- Q-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate downward by delta or to the Z position, whichever is less deep.
3. Rapid back out to the clear_z.
4. Rapid back down to the current hole bottom, backed off a bit.
5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 until the Z position is reached at step 2.
6. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.

It is an error if:

- the Q number is negative or zero.

14.18.5 G84: Right-Hand Tapping

This code is currently unimplemented in EMC2. It is accepted, but the behavior is undefined. See G33.1

14.18.6 G85: Boring, No Dwell, Feed Out

The G85 cycle is intended for boring or reaming, but could be used for drilling or milling. Program G85 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
3. Retract the Z-axis at the current feed rate to clear Z.

14.18.7 G86: Boring, Spindle Stop, Rapid Out

The G86 cycle is intended for boring. This cycle uses a P number for the number of seconds to dwell. Program G86 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L- P-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
3. Dwell for the P number of seconds.
4. Stop the spindle turning.
5. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.
6. Restart the spindle in the direction it was going.

The spindle must be turning before this cycle is used. It is an error if:

- the spindle is not turning before this cycle is executed.

14.18.8 G87: Back Boring

This code is currently unimplemented in EMC2. It is accepted, but the behavior is undefined.

14.18.9 G88: Boring, Spindle Stop, Manual Out

This code is currently unimplemented in EMC2. It is accepted, but the behavior is undefined.

14.18.10 G89: Boring, Dwell, Feed Out

The G89 cycle is intended for boring. This cycle uses a P number, where P specifies the number of seconds to dwell. program G89 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L- P-

1. Preliminary motion, as described above.
2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
3. Dwell for the P number of seconds.
4. Retract the Z-axis at the current feed rate to clear Z.

14.18.11 G90, G91: Set Distance Mode

Interpretation of RS274/NGC code can be in one of two distance modes: absolute or incremental.

To go into absolute distance mode, program G90. In absolute distance mode, axis numbers (X, Y, Z, A, B, C) usually represent positions in terms of the currently active coordinate system. Any exceptions to that rule are described explicitly in this Section [14.18](#).

To go into incremental distance mode, program G91. In incremental distance mode, axis numbers (X, Y, Z, A, B, C) usually represent increments from the current values of the numbers.

I and J numbers always represent increments, regardless of the distance mode setting. K numbers represent increments in all but one usage (see Section [14.18.8](#)), where the meaning changes with distance mode.

14.19 G92, G92.1, G92.2, G92.3: Coordinate System Offsets

See Section 12.6 for an overview of coordinate systems.

To make the current point have the coordinates you want (without motion), program `G92 X- Y- Z- A- B- C-`, where the axis words contain the axis numbers you want. All axis words are optional, except that at least one must be used. If an axis word is not used for a given axis, the coordinate on that axis of the current point is not changed. It is an error if:

1. all axis words are omitted.

When `G92` is executed, the origin of the currently active coordinate system moves. To do this, origin offsets are calculated so that the coordinates of the current point with respect to the moved origin are as specified on the line containing the `G92`. In addition, parameters 5211 to 5216 are set to the X, Y, Z, A, B, and C-axis offsets. The offset for an axis is the amount the origin must be moved so that the coordinate of the controlled point on the axis has the specified value.

Here is an example. Suppose the current point is at $X=4$ in the currently specified coordinate system and the current X-axis offset is zero, then `G92 x7` sets the X-axis offset to -3, sets parameter 5211 to -3, and causes the X-coordinate of the current point to be 7.

The axis offsets are always used when motion is specified in absolute distance mode using any of the nine coordinate systems (those designated by `G54 - G59.3`). Thus all nine coordinate systems are affected by `G92`.

Being in incremental distance mode has no effect on the action of `G92`.

Non-zero offsets may be already be in effect when the `G92` is called. If this is the case, the new value of each offset is $A+B$, where A is what the offset would be if the old offset were zero, and B is the old offset. For example, after the previous example, the X-value of the current point is 7. If `G92 x9` is then programmed, the new X-axis offset is -5, which is calculated by $[[7-9] + -3]$.

To reset axis offsets to zero, program `G92.1` or `G92.2`. `G92.1` sets parameters 5211 to 5216 to zero, whereas `G92.2` leaves their current values alone.

To set the axis offset values to the values given in parameters 5211 to 5216, program `G92.3`.

You can set axis offsets in one program and use the same offsets in another program. Program `G92` in the first program. This will set parameters 5211 to 5216. Do not use `G92.1` in the remainder of the first program. The parameter values will be saved when the first program exits and restored when the second one starts up. Use `G92.3` near the beginning of the second program. That will restore the offsets saved in the first program. If other programs are to run between the the program that sets the offsets and the one that restores them, make a copy of the parameter file written by the first program and use it as the parameter file for the second program.

14.20 G93, G94, G95: Set Feed Rate Mode

Three feed rate modes are recognized: units per minute, inverse time, and units per revolution. Program `G94` to start the units per minute mode. Program `G93` to start the inverse time mode. Program `G95` to start the units per revolution mode.

In units per minute feed rate mode, an `F` word is interpreted to mean the controlled point should move at a certain number of inches per minute, millimeters per minute, or degrees per minute, depending upon what length units are being used and which axis or axes are moving.

In units per revolution mode, an `F` word is interpreted to mean the controlled point should move a certain number of inches per revolution of the spindle, depending on what length units are being used and which axis or axes are moving.

In inverse time feed rate mode, an F word means the move should be completed in [one divided by the F number] minutes. For example, if the F number is 2.0, the move should be completed in half a minute.

When the inverse time feed rate mode is active, an F word must appear on every line which has a G1, G2, or G3 motion, and an F word on a line that does not have G1, G2, or G3 is ignored. Being in inverse time feed rate mode does not affect G0 (rapid traverse) motions. It is an error if:

- inverse time feed rate mode is active and a line with G1, G2, or G3 (explicitly or implicitly) does not have an F word.
- A new feed rate is not specified after switching to G94 or G95

14.21 G96, G97: Spindle control mode

Two spindle control modes are recognized: revolutions per minute, and constant surface speed. Program G96 D- S- to select constant surface speed of S feet per minute (if G20 is in effect) or meters per minute (if G21 is in effect). The maximum spindle speed is set by the D- number in revolutions per minute.

Program G97 to select RPM mode.

It is an error if:

- S is not specified with G96
- A feed move is specified in G96 mode while the spindle is not turning

14.22 G98, G99: Set Canned Cycle Return Level

When the spindle retracts during canned cycles, there is a choice of how far it retracts: (1) retract perpendicular to the selected plane to the position indicated by the R word, or (2) retract perpendicular to the selected plane to the position that axis was in just before the canned cycle started (unless that position is lower than the position indicated by the R word, in which case use the R word position).

To use option (1), program G99. To use option (2), program G98. Remember that the R word has different meanings in absolute distance mode and incremental distance mode.

Chapter 15

M Codes

15.1 M0, M1, M2, M30, M60: Program Stopping and Ending

To stop a running program temporarily (regardless of the setting of the optional stop switch), program M0.

To stop a running program temporarily (but only if the optional stop switch is on), program M1.

It is OK to program M0 and M1 in MDI mode, but the effect will probably not be noticeable, because normal behavior in MDI mode is to stop after each line of input, anyway.

To exchange pallet shuttles and then stop a running program temporarily (regardless of the setting of the optional stop switch), program M60.

If a program is stopped by an M0, M1, or M60, pressing the cycle start button will restart the program at the following line.

To end a program, program M2. To exchange pallet shuttles and then end a program, program M30. Both of these commands have the following effects.

1. Axis offsets are set to zero (like G92.2) and origin offsets are set to the default (like G54).
2. Selected plane is set to CANON_PLANE_XY (like G17).
3. Distance mode is set to MODE_ABSOLUTE (like G90).
4. Feed rate mode is set to UNITS_PER_MINUTE (like G94).
5. Feed and speed overrides are set to ON (like M48).
6. Cutter compensation is turned off (like G40).
7. The spindle is stopped (like M5).
8. The current motion mode is set to G_1 (like G1).
9. Coolant is turned off (like M9).

No more lines of code in an RS274/NGC file will be executed after the M2 or M30 command is executed. Pressing cycle start will start the program back at the beginning of the file.

15.2 M3, M4, M5: Spindle Control

To start the spindle turning clockwise at the currently programmed speed, program M3.

To start the spindle turning counterclockwise at the currently programmed speed, program M4.

To stop the spindle from turning, program M5.

It is OK to use M3 or M4 if the spindle speed is set to zero. If this is done (or if the speed override switch is enabled and set to zero), the spindle will not start turning. If, later, the spindle speed is set above zero (or the override switch is turned up), the spindle will start turning. It is OK to use M3 or M4 when the spindle is already turning or to use M5 when the spindle is already stopped.

15.3 M6: Tool Change

To change a tool in the spindle from the tool currently in the spindle to the tool most recently selected (using a T word - see Section 17.3), program M6. When the tool change is complete:

- The spindle will be stopped.
- The tool that was selected (by a T word on the same line or on any line after the previous tool change) will be in the spindle. The T number is an integer giving the changer slot of the tool (not its id).
- If the selected tool was not in the spindle before the tool change, the tool that was in the spindle (if there was one) will be in its changer slot.
- The axis positions may be modified
- No other changes will be made. For example, coolant will continue to flow during the tool change unless it has been turned off by an M9.

The tool change may include axis motion. It is OK (but not useful) to program a change to the tool already in the spindle. It is OK if there is no tool in the selected slot; in that case, the spindle will be empty after the tool change. If slot zero was last selected, there will definitely be no tool in the spindle after a tool change.

15.4 M7, M8, M9: Coolant Control

To turn mist coolant on, program M7.

To turn flood coolant on, program M8.

To turn all coolant off, program M9.

It is always OK to use any of these commands, regardless of what coolant is on or off.

15.5 M48, M49: Override Control

To enable the spindle speed and feed rate override switches, program M48. To disable both switches, program M49. See Section 12.3.1 for more details. It is OK to enable or disable the switches when they are already enabled or disabled. These switches can also be toggled individually using M50 and M51 as described in the sections 15.6 and 15.7.

15.6 M50: Feed Override Control

To enable the feed rate override switch, program M50 or M50 P1. To disable the switch program M50 P0. While disabled the feed override will have no influence, and the motion will be executed at programmed feed rate. (unless there is an adaptive feed rate override active).

15.7 M51: Spindle Speed Override Control

To enable the spindle speed override switch, program M51 or M51 P1. To disable the switch program M51 P0. While disabled the spindle speed override will have no influence, and the spindle speed will have the exact program specified value (using the S-word as described in [17.2](#)).

15.8 M52: Adaptive Feed Control

To use an adaptive feed, program M52 or M52 P1. To stop using adaptive feed, program M52 P0. When adaptive feed is enabled, some external input value is used together with the user interface feed override value and the commanded feed rate to set the actual feed rate. In EMC2, the HAL pin `motion.adaptive-feed` is used for this purpose. Values on `motion.adaptive-feed` should range from 0 (feed hold) to 1 (full speed).

15.9 M53: Feed Stop Control

To enable the feed stop switch, program M53 or M53 P1. To disable the switch program M53 P0. Enabling the feed stop switch will allow motion to be interrupted by means of the feedstop control. In EMC2, the HAL pin `motion.feed-hold` is used for this purpose. Values of 1 will cause the motion to stop (if M53 is active).

15.10 M62 to M65: Digital Output Control

To control a digital output bit, program M- P-, where the M-word ranges from 62 to 65, and the P-word ranges from 0 to an implementation-defined maximum.

M62 Turn on digital output synched with motion

M63 Turn off digital output synched with motion

M64 Turn on digital output immediately

M65 Turn off digital output immediately

15.11 M66: Digital Input Control

To control a digital input bit, program M66 P- E- L- Q- , where the P-word and the E-word ranges from 0 to an implementation-defined maximum. Only one of the P or E words must be present. It is an error if they are both missing.

M66 Wait on an input

- The P-word specifies the digital input number.
- The E-word specifies the analog input number.
- The L-word specifies the wait type:
 - 0** - WAIT_MODE_IMMEDIATE - no waiting, returns immediately. The current value of the input is stored in parameter #5399
 - 1** - WAIT_MODE_RISE - waits for the selected input to perform a rise event.
 - 2** - WAIT_MODE_FALL - waits for the selected input to perform a fall event.
 - 3** - WAIT_MODE_HIGH - waits for the selected input to go to the HIGH state.
 - 4** - WAIT_MODE_LOW - waits for the selected input to go to the LOW state.
- The Q-word specifies the timeout for the waiting. If the timeout is exceeded, the wait is interrupted, and the variable #5399 will be holding the value -1.

M66 wait on an input stops further execution of the program, until the selected event (or the programmed timeout) occurs. It is an error to program a timeout value of 0 with any mode different than mode 0.

It is also an error to program M66 with both a P-word and an E-word (thus selecting both an analog and a digital input).

15.12 M100 to M199: User Defined Commands

To invoke a user-defined command, program M- P- Q- where P- and Q- are both optional. The external program "Mnnn" in the directory [DISPLAY]PROGRAM_PREFIX is executed with the P and Q values as its two arguments. Execution of the RS274NGC file pauses until the invoked program exits.

It is an error if

- The specified User Defined Command does not exist

Chapter 16

O Codes

O-codes provide for flow control in NC programs. Each block has an associated number, which is the number used after O. Care must be taken to properly match the O-numbers.

The behavior is undefined if

- Other words are used on a line with an O- word
- Comments are used on a line with an O-word

16.1 Subroutines: “sub”, “endsub”, “return”, “call”

Subroutines extend from a O- sub to an O- endsub. The lines inside the subroutine (the “body”) are not executed in order; instead, they are executed each time the subroutine is called with O- call.

```
O100 sub (subroutine to move to machine home)
GO X0 Y0 Z0
O100 endsub
(many intervening lines)
O100 call
```

Inside a subroutine, O- return can be executed. This immediately returns to the calling code, just as though O- endsub was encountered.

O- call takes up to 30 optional arguments, which are passed to the subroutine as #1, #2, ..., #N. Parameters from #N+1 to #30 have the same value as in the calling context. On return from the subroutine, the values of parameters #1 through #30 (regardless of the number of arguments) will be restored to the values they had before the call.

Because “1 2 3” is parsed as the number 123, the parameters must be enclosed in square brackets. The following calls a subroutine with 3 arguments:

```
O200 call [1] [2] [3]
```

Subroutine bodies may not be nested. They may only be called after they are defined. They may be called from other functions, and may call themselves recursively if it makes sense to do so. The maximum subroutine nesting level is 10.

Subroutines do not have “return values”, but they may change the value of parameters above #30 and those changes will be visible to the calling code. Subroutines may also change the value of global named parameters.

16.2 Looping: “do”, “while”, “endwhile”, “break”, “continue”

The “while loop” has two structures: while/endwhile, and do/while. In each case, the loop is exited when the “while” condition evaluates to false.

```
(draw a sawtooth shape)
F100
#1 = 0
O101 while [#1 lt 10]
G1 X0
G1 Y[#1/10] X1
#1 = [#1+1]
O101 endwhile
```

Inside a while loop, O- break immediately exits the loop, and O- continue immediately skips to the next evaluation of the while condition. If it is still true, the loop begins again at the top. If it is false, it exits the loop.

16.3 Conditional: “if”, “else”, “endif”

The “if” conditional executes one group of statements if a condition is true and another if it is false.

```
(Set feed rate depending on a variable)
O102 if [#2 GT 5]
F100
O102 else
F200
O102 endif
```

16.4 Indirection

The O-number may be given by a parameter or calculation.

```
O[#101+2] call
```

16.5 Computing values in O-words

In O-words, Parameters (section [13.3.2](#)), Expressions (section [13.3.4](#)), Binary Operators (section [13.3.5](#)) and Functions (table [13.3](#)) are particularly useful.

Chapter 17

Other Codes

17.1 F: Set Feed Rate

To set the feed rate, program `F-`. The application of the feed rate is as described in Section [12.2.5](#), unless inverse time feed rate mode is in effect, in which case the feed rate is as described in Section [14.20](#).

17.2 S: Set Spindle Speed

To set the speed in revolutions per minute (rpm) of the spindle, program `S-`. The spindle will turn at that speed when it has been programmed to start turning. It is OK to program an S word whether the spindle is turning or not. If the speed override switch is enabled and not set at 100%, the speed will be different from what is programmed. It is OK to program `S0`; the spindle will not turn if that is done. It is an error if:

- the S number is negative.

As described in Section [14.18.5](#), if a `G84` (tapping) canned cycle is active and the feed and speed override switches are enabled, the one set at the lower setting will take effect. The speed and feed rates will still be synchronized. In this case, the speed may differ from what is programmed, even if the speed override switch is set at 100%.

17.3 T: Select Tool

To select a tool, program `T-`, where the T number is the carousel slot for the tool. The tool is not changed until an `M6` is programmed (see Section [15.3](#)). The T word may appear on the same line as the `M6` or on a previous line. It is OK, but not normally useful, if T words appear on two or more lines with no tool change. The carousel may move a lot, but only the most recent T word will take effect at the next tool change. It is OK to program `T0`; no tool will be selected. This is useful if you want the spindle to be empty after a tool change. It is an error if:

- a negative T number is used,
- or a T number larger than the number of slots in the carousel is used.

On some machines, the carousel will move when a T word is programmed, at the same time machining is occurring. On such machines, programming the T word several lines before a tool change will save time. A common programming practice for such machines is to put the T word for the next tool to be used on the line after a tool change. This maximizes the time available for the carousel to move.

Chapter 18

Order of Execution

The order of execution of items on a line is critical to safe and effective machine operation. Items are executed in the order shown below if they occur on the same line.

1. Comment (including message)
2. set feed rate mode (G93, G94).
3. set feed rate (F).
4. set spindle speed (S).
5. select tool (T).
6. change tool (M6).
7. spindle on or off (M3, M4, M5).
8. coolant on or off (M7, M8, M9).
9. enable or disable overrides (M48, M49).
10. dwell (G4).
11. set active plane (G17, G18, G19).
12. set length units (G20, G21).
13. cutter radius compensation on or off (G40, G41, G42)
14. cutter length compensation on or off (G43, G49)
15. coordinate system selection (G54, G55, G56, G57, G58, G59, G59.1, G59.2, G59.3).
16. set path control mode (G61, G61.1, G64)
17. set distance mode (G90, G91).
18. set retract mode (G98, G99).
19. home (G28, G30) or change coordinate system data (G10) or set axis offsets (G92, G92.1, G92.2, G94).
20. perform motion (G0 to G3, G33, G80 to G89), as modified (possibly) by G53.
21. stop (M0, M1, M2, M30, M60).

Chapter 19

G-Code Best Practices

19.1 Use an appropriate decimal precision

Use at least 3 digits after the decimal when milling in millimeters, and at least 4 digits after the decimal when milling in inches. In particular, arc tolerance checks are made to .001 and .0001 depending on the active units.

19.2 Use consistent white space

G-code is most legible when at least one space appears before words. While it is permitted to insert whitespace in the middle of numbers, there is no reason to do so.

19.3 Prefer “Center-format” arcs

Center-format arcs (which use I- J- K- instead of R-) behave more consistently than R-format arcs, particularly for included angles near 180 or 360 degrees.

19.4 Put important modal settings at the top of the file

When correct execution of your program depends on modal settings, be sure to set them at the beginning of the part program. Modes can carry over from previous programs and from the MDI commands.

As a good preventative measure, put a line similar to the following at the top of all your programs:

```
G17 G20 G40 G49 G54 G80 G90 G94
```

(XY plane, inch mode, cancel diameter compensation, cancel length offset, coordinate system 1, cancel motion, non-incremental motion, feed/minute mode)

Perhaps the most critical modal setting is the distance units–If you do not include G20 or G21, then different machines will mill the program at different scales. Other settings, such as the return mode in canned cycles may also be important.

19.5 Don't put too many things on one line

Ignore everything in Section 18, and instead write no line of code that is the slightest bit ambiguous. Similarly, don't use and set a parameter on the same line, even though the semantics are well defined. (Exception: Updating a variable to a new value, such as `#1=[#1+#2]`)

19.6 Don't use line numbers

Line numbers offer no benefits. When line numbers are reported in error messages, the numbers refer to the line number in the file, not the N-word value.

19.7 When moving more than one coordinate system, consider inverse time feed mode

Because the meaning of an F-word in feed-per-minute mode varies depending on which axes are commanded to move, and because the amount of material removed does not depend only on the feed rate, it may be easier to use G93 inverse time feed mode to achieve the desired material removal rate.

Chapter 20

Tool File and Compensation

20.1 Tool File

Tool length and diameter may come from the tool file (see section 12.4) or from a word specified when tool compensation is enabled.

20.2 Tool Compensation

Tool compensation can cause problems for the best of nc code programmers. But it can be a powerful aid when used to help an operator get a part to size. By setting and resetting length and diameter of tools in a single tool table, offsets can be made during a production run that allow for variation in tool size, or for minor deviation from the programmed distances and size. And these changes can be made without the operator having to search through and change numbers in a program file.

Throughout this unit you will find occasional references to canonical functions where these are necessary for the reader to understand how a tool offset works in a specific situation. These references are intended to give the reader a sense of sequence rather than requiring the reader to understand the way that canonical functions themselves work within the EMC.

20.3 Tool Length Offsets

Tool length offsets are given as positive numbers in the tool table. A tool length offset is programmed using G43 Hn, where n is the desired table index. It is expected that all entries in the tool table will be positive. The H number is checked for being a non-negative integer when it is read. The interpreter behaves as follows.

1. If G43 Hn is programmed, A `USE_TOOL_LENGTH_OFFSET(length)` function call is made (where length is the value of the tool length offset entry in the tool table whose index is n), `tool_length_offset` is reset in the machine settings model, and the value of `current_z` in the model is adjusted. Note that n does not have to be the same as the slot number of the tool currently in the spindle.
2. If G49 is programmed, `USE_TOOL_LENGTH_OFFSET(0.0)` is called, `tool_length_offset` is reset to 0.0 in the machine settings model, and the value of `current_z` in the model is adjusted. The effect of tool length compensation is illustrated in the screen shot below. Notice that the length of the tool is subtracted from the z setting so that the tool tip appears at the programmed setting. You should note that the effect of tool length compensation is immediate when you view the z position as a relative coordinate but it does affect actual machine position until you program a z move.

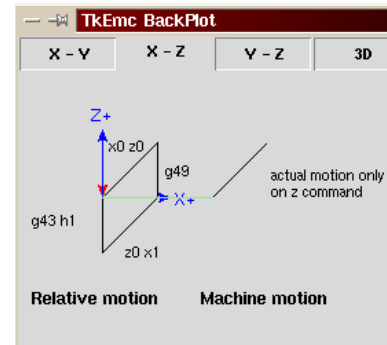
Test tool length program.

Tool #1 is 1 inch long.

```

N01 G1 F15 X0 Y0 Z0
N02 G43 H1 Z0 X1
N03 G49 X0 Z0
N04 G0 X2
N05 G1 G43 H1 G4 P10 Z0 X3
N06 G49 X2 Z0
N07 G0 X0

```



The effect of this is that in most cases the machine will pick up the offset as a ramp during the next xyz move after the g43 word.

20.4 Cutter Radius Compensation

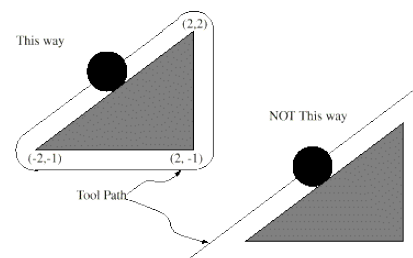
Cutter Diameter Compensation (also called Cutter Radius Compensation) is something that was obviously added onto the RS-274D specification at the demand of users, as it is VERY useful, but the implementation was poorly thought out. The purpose of this feature is to allow the programmer of the tool path program to 'virtualize' the tool path, so that the control can, at run time, determine the correct offset from the surface to be cut, based on the tools available. If you resharpen the side cutting edges of end mills, then they will end up smaller than the standard diameters.

The problem is to describe to the control whether the tool is going to be cutting on the outside of an imaginary path, or on the inside. Since these paths are not necessarily closed paths (although they can be), it is essentially impossible for the control to know which side of the line it is supposed to offset to. It was decided that there would only be two choices, tool 'left' of path, and tool 'right' of path of path. This is to be interpreted as left or right 'when facing the direction of cutter motion'. The interpretation is as if you were standing on the part, walking behind the tool as it progresses across the part.

20.4.1 Cutter Radius Compensation Detail

The cutter radius compensation capabilities of the interpreter enable the programmer to specify that a cutter should travel to the right or left of an open or closed contour in the XY-plane composed of arcs of circles and straight line segments. The contour may be the outline of material not to be machined away, or it may be a tool path to be followed by an exactly sized tool. This figure shows two examples of the path of a tool cutting using cutter radius compensation so that it leaves a triangle of material remaining.

In both examples, the shaded triangle represents material which should remain after cutting, and the line outside the shaded triangle represents the path of the tip of a cutting tool. Both paths will leave the shaded triangle uncut. The one on the left (with rounded corners) is the path the interpreter will generate. In the method on the right (the one not used), the tool does not stay in contact with the shaded triangle at sharp corners.



Z axis motion may take place while the contour is being followed in the XY plane. Portions of the contour may be skipped by retracting the Z axis above the part, following the contour to the next

point at which machining should be done, and re-extending the Z-axis. These skip motions may be performed at feed rate (G1) or at traverse rate (G0). Inverse time feed rate (G93) or units per minute feed rate (G94) may be used with cutter radius compensation. Under G94, the feed rate will apply to the actual path of the cutter tip, not to the programmed contour.

Programming Instructions

- To start cutter radius compensation, program either G41 (for keeping the tool to the left of the contour) or G42 (for keeping the tool to the right of the contour). In Figure 7, for example, if G41 were programmed, the tool would stay left and move clockwise around the triangle, and if G42 were programmed, the tool would stay right and move counterclockwise around the triangle.
- To stop cutter radius compensation, program G40.
- If G40, G41, or G42 is programmed in the same block as tool motion, cutter compensation will be turned on or off before the motion is made. To make the motion come first, the motion must be programmed in a separate, previous block.

D Number

The current interpreter requires a D number on each line that has the G41 or G42 word. The value specified with D must be a non-negative integer. It represents the slot number of the tool whose radius (half the diameter given in the tool table) will be used, or it may be zero (which is not a slot number). If it is zero, the value of the radius will also be zero. Any slot in the tool table may be selected this way. The D number does not have to be the same as the slot number of the tool in the spindle.

Tool Table

Cutter radius compensation uses data from the machining center's tool table. For each slot in the tool carousel, the tool table contains the diameter of the tool in that slot (or the difference between the actual diameter of the tool in the slot and its nominal value). The tool table is indexed by slot number. How to put data into the table when using the stand-alone interpreter is discussed in the tool table page.

Two Kinds of Contour

The interpreter handles compensation for two types of contour:

- The contour given in the NC code is the edge of material that is not to be machined away. We will call this type a "material edge contour".
- The contour given in the NC code is the tool path that would be followed by a tool of exactly the correct radius. We will call this type a "tool path contour".

The interpreter does not have any setting that determines which type of contour is used, but the description of the contour will differ (for the same part geometry) between the two types and the values for diameters in the tool table will be different for the two types.

Material Edge Contour

When the contour is the edge of the material, the outline of the edge is described in the NC program. For a material edge contour, the value for the diameter in the tool table is the actual value of the diameter of the tool. The value in the table must be positive. The NC code for a material edge contour is the same regardless of the (actual or intended) diameter of the tool.

Example 1 :

Here is an NC program which cuts material away from the outside of the triangle in figure above. In this example, the cutter compensation radius is the actual radius of the tool in use, which is 0.5. The value for the diameter in the tool table is twice the radius, which is 1.0.

```
N0010 G41 G1 X2 Y2 (turn compensation on and make entry move)
N0020 Y-1 (follow right side of triangle)
N0030 X-2 (follow bottom side of triangle)
N0040 X2 Y2 (follow hypotenuse of triangle)
N0050 G40 (turn compensation off)
```

This will result in the tool following a path consisting of an entry move and the path shown on the left going clockwise around the triangle. Notice that the coordinates of the triangle of material appear in the NC code. Notice also that the tool path includes three arcs which are not explicitly programmed; they are generated automatically.

Tool Path Contour

When the contour is a tool path contour, the path is described in the NC program. It is expected that (except for during the entry moves) the path is intended to create some part geometry. The path may be generated manually or by a post-processor, considering the part geometry which is intended to be made. For the interpreter to work, the tool path must be such that the tool stays in contact with the edge of the part geometry, as shown on the left side of Figure 7. If a path of the sort shown on the right of Figure 7 is used, in which the tool does not stay in contact with the part geometry all the time, the interpreter will not be able to compensate properly when undersized tools are used.

For a tool path contour, the value for the cutter diameter in the tool table will be a small positive number if the selected tool is slightly oversized and will be a small negative number if the tool is slightly undersized. As implemented, if a cutter diameter value is negative, the interpreter compensates on the other side of the contour from the one programmed and uses the absolute value of the given diameter. If the actual tool is the correct size, the value in the table should be zero.

Tool Path Contour example

Suppose the diameter of the cutter currently in the spindle is 0.97, and the diameter assumed in generating the tool path was 1.0. Then the value in the tool table for the diameter for this tool should be -0.03. Here is an NC program which cuts material away from the outside of the triangle in the figure.

```
N0010 G1 X1 Y4.5 (make alignment move)
N0020 G41 G1 Y3.5 (turn compensation on and make first entry move)
N0030 G3 X2 Y2.5 I1 (make second entry move)
N0040 G2 X2.5 Y2 J-0.5 (cut along arc at top of tool path)
N0050 G1 Y-1 (cut along right side of tool path)
N0060 G2 X2 Y-1.5 I-0.5 (cut along arc at bottom right of tool path)
N0070 G1 X-2 (cut along bottom side of tool path)
N0080 G2 X-2.3 Y-0.6 J0.5 (cut along arc at bottom left of tool path)
N0090 G1 X1.7 Y2.4 (cut along hypotenuse of tool path)
N0100 G2 X2 Y2.5 I0.3 J-0.4 (cut along arc at top of tool path)
N0110 G40 (turn compensation off)
```

This will result in the tool making an alignment move and two entry moves, and then following a path slightly inside the path shown on the left in Figure 7 going clockwise around the triangle. This path is to the right of the programmed path even though G41 was programmed, because the diameter value is negative.

Programming Errors and Limitations

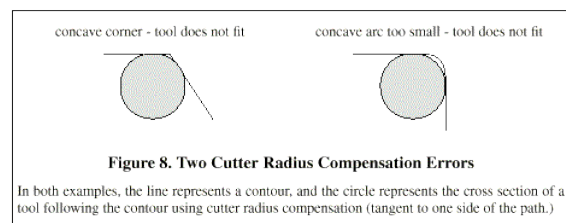
The interpreter will issue the following messages involving cutter radius compensation.

1. Cannot change axis offsets with cutter radius comp
2. Cannot change units with cutter radius comp
3. Cannot turn cutter radius comp on out of XY-plane
4. Cannot turn cutter radius comp on when already on
5. Cannot use G28 or G30 with cutter radius comp
6. Cannot use G53 with cutter radius comp
7. Cannot use XZ plane with cutter radius comp
8. Cannot use YZ plane with cutter radius comp
9. Concave corner with cutter radius comp
10. Cutter gouging with cutter radius comp
11. D word on line with no cutter comp on (G41 or G42) command
12. Tool radius index too big
13. Tool radius not less than arc radius with cutter radius comp
14. Two G codes used from same modal group.

For some of these messages additional explanation is given below.

Changing a tool while cutter radius compensation is on is not treated as an error, although it is unlikely this would be done intentionally. The radius used when cutter radius compensation was first turned on will continue to be used until compensation is turned off, even though a new tool is actually being used.

When cutter radius compensation is on, it must be physically possible for a circle whose radius is the half the diameter given in the tool table to be tangent to the contour at all points of the contour.



In particular, the interpreter treats concave corners and concave arcs into which the circle will not fit as errors, since the circle cannot be kept tangent to the contour in these situations. This error detection does not limit the shapes which can be cut, but it does require that the programmer specify the actual shape to be cut (or path to be followed), not an approximation. In this respect, the interpreter differs from interpreters used with many other controllers, which often allow these errors silently and either gouge the part or round the corner. If cutter radius compensation has already been turned on, it cannot be turned on again. It must be turned off first; then it can be turned on again. It is not necessary to move the cutter between turning compensation off and back on, but the move after turning it back on will be treated as a first move, as described below.

It is not possible to change from one cutter radius index to another while compensation is on because of the combined effect of rules 4 and 11. It is also not possible to switch compensation from one side to another while compensation is on. If the tool is already covering up the next XY destination point when cutter radius compensation is turned on, the gouging message is given when the line of NC code which gives the point is reached. In this situation, the tool is already cutting into material it should not cut.

If a D word is programmed that is larger than the number of tool carousel slots, an error message is given. In the current implementation, the number of slots is 68.

The error message, "two G Codes Used from Same Modal Group," is a generic message used for many sets of G codes. As applied to cutter radius compensation, it means that more than one of G40, G41, and G42 appears on a line of NC code. This is not allowed.

First Move

The algorithm used for the first move when the first move is a straight line is to draw a straight line from the destination point which is tangent to a circle whose center is at the current point and whose radius is the radius of the tool. The destination point of the tool tip is then found as the center of a circle of the same radius tangent to the tangent line at the destination point. This is shown in Figure 9. If the programmed point is inside the initial cross section of the tool (the circle on the left), an error is signalled.

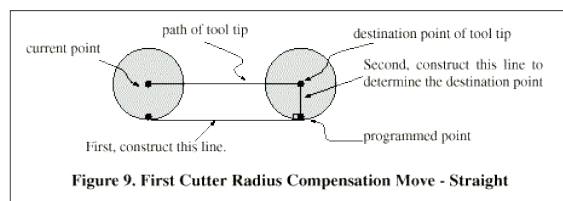


Figure 9. First Cutter Radius Compensation Move - Straight

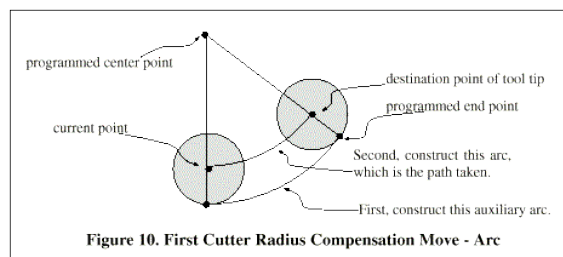


Figure 10. First Cutter Radius Compensation Move - Arc

If the first move after cutter radius compensation has been turned on is an arc, the arc which is generated is derived from an auxiliary arc which has its center at the programmed center point, passes through the programmed end point, and is tangent to the cutter at its current location. If the auxiliary arc cannot be constructed, an error is signalled. The generated arc moves the tool so that it stays tangent to the auxiliary arc throughout the move. This is shown in Figure 10.

Regardless of whether the first move is a straight line or an arc, the Z axis may also move at the same time. It will move linearly, as it does when cutter radius compensation is not being used. Rotary axis motions (A, B, and C axes) are allowed with cutter radius compensation, but using them would be very unusual.

After the entry moves of cutter radius compensation, the interpreter keeps the tool tangent to the programmed path on the appropriate side. If a convex corner is on the path, an arc is inserted to go around the corner. The radius of the arc is half the diameter given in the tool table.

When cutter radius compensation is turned off, no special exit move takes place. The next move is what it would have been if cutter radius compensation had never been turned on and the previous move had placed the tool at its current position.

Programming Entry Moves

In general, an alignment move and two entry moves are needed to begin compensation correctly. However, where the programmed contour is a material edge contour and there is a convex corner on the contour, only one entry move (plus, possibly, a pre-entry move) is needed. The general method, which will work in all situations, is described first. We assume here that the programmer knows what the contour is already and has the job of adding entry moves.

General Method

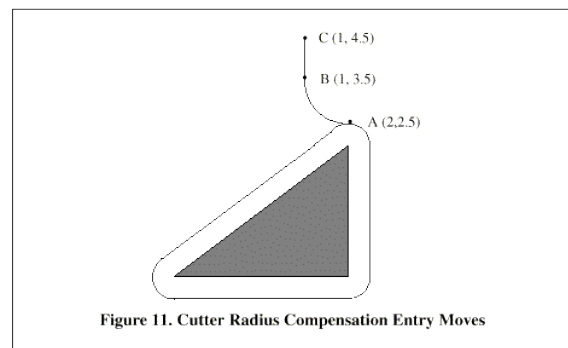
The general method includes programming an alignment move and two entry moves. The entry moves given above will be used as an example. Here is the relevant code again:

```
N0010 G1 X1 Y4.5 (make alignment move to point C)
N0020 G41 G1 Y3.5 (turn compensation on and make first entry move to point B)
N0030 G3 X2 Y2.5 I1 (make second entry move to point A)
```

See Figure 11. The figure shows the two entry moves but not the alignment move.

First, pick a point A on the contour where it is convenient to attach an entry arc. Specify an arc outside the contour which begins at a point B and ends at A tangent to the contour (and going in the same direction as it is planned to go around the contour). The radius of the arc should be larger than half the diameter given in the tool table. Then extend a line tangent to the arc from B to some point C, located so that the line BC is more than one radius long.

After the construction is finished, the code is written in the reverse order from the construction. Cutter radius compensation is turned on after the alignment move and before the first entry move. In the code above, line N0010 is the alignment move, line N0020 turns compensation on and makes the first entry move, and line N0030 makes the second entry move.



In this example, the arc AB and the line BC are fairly large, but they need not be. For a tool path contour, the radius of arc AB need only be slightly larger than the maximum possible deviation of the radius of the tool from the exact size. Also for a tool path contour, the side chosen for compensation should be the one to use if the tool is oversized. As mentioned earlier, if the tool is undersized, the interpreter will switch sides.

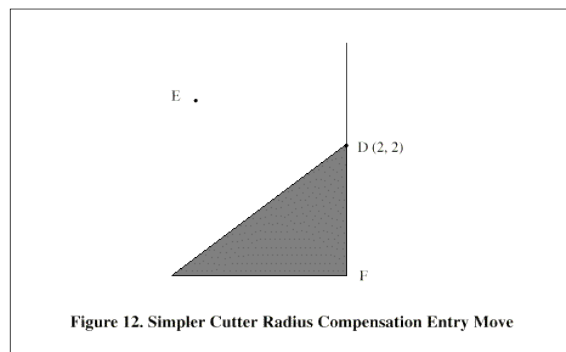
Simple Method

If the contour is a material edge contour and there is a convex corner somewhere on the contour, a simpler method of making an entry is available. See Figure 12.

First, pick a convex corner, D. Decide which way you want to go along the contour from D. In our example we are keeping the tool to the left of the contour and going next towards F. Extend the line FD (if the next part of the contour is an arc, extend the tangent to arc FD from D) to divide the area outside the contour near D into two regions. Make sure the center of the tool is currently in the region on the same side of the extended line as the material inside the contour near D. If not, move the tool into that region. In the example, point E represents the current location of the center of the tool. Since it is on the same side of line DF as the shaded triangle, no additional move is needed. Now write a line of NC code that turns compensation on and moves to point D

```
N0010 G41 G1 X2 Y2 (turn
compensation on and make entry
move)
```

This method will also work at a concave corner on a tool path contour, if the actual tool is oversized, but it will fail with a tool path contour if the tool is undersized.



Other Items Where Cutter Radius Compensation is Performed.

The complete set of canonical functions includes functions which turn cutter radius on and off, so that cutter radius compensation can be performed in the controller executing the canonical functions. In the interpreter, however, these commands are not used. Compensation is done by the interpreter and reflected in the output commands, which continue to direct the motion of the center of the cutter tip. This simplifies the job of the motion controller while making the job of the interpreter a little harder.

Algorithms for Cutter Radius Compensation

The interpreter allows the entry and exit moves to be arcs. The behavior for the intermediate moves is the same, except that some situations treated as errors in the interpreter are not treated as errors in other machine controls.

Data for Cutter Radius Compensation

The interpreter machine model keeps three data items for cutter radius compensation: the setting itself (right, left, or off), program_x, and program_y. The last two represent the X and Y positions which are given in the NC code while compensation is on. When compensation is off, these both are set to a very small number (10^-20) whose symbolic value (in a #define) is "unknown". The interpreter machine model uses the data items current_x and current_y to represent the position of the center of the tool tip (in the currently active coordinate system) at all times.

Jon Elson's Example

All further system-specific information refers to NIST's EMC program, but much of it applies to most modern CNC controls. My method of checking these programs is to first select tool zero, which always has a diameter of zero, so offset commands are essentially ignored. Then, I tape a sheet of paper to a piece of material that sits level in my vise, as a sort of platen. I install a spring-loaded pen in the spindle. This is a standard ballpoint pen refill cartridge made of metal, in a 1/2" diameter steel housing. It has a spring that loads the pen against the front, and a 'collet' at the front that allows the pen to retract against the spring, but keeps it centered within a few thousandths of an inch. I run the program with tool zero selected, and it draws a line at the actual part's outline. (see figure below) Then, I select a tool with the diameter of the tool I intend to use, and run the program again. (Note that Z coordinates in the program may need to be changed to prevent plunging the pen through the platen.) Now, I get to see whether the G41 or G42 compensation that I specified will cut on the desired side of the part. If it doesn't, I then edit the opposite compensation command into the program, and try again. Now, with the tool on the correct side of the work, you get to see if there are any places where the tool is 'too fat' to fit in a concave part of the surface. My old Allen-Bradley 7320 was pretty forgiving on this, but EMC is a complete stickler. If you have ANY concavity where

two lines meet at less than 180 degrees on the side that a tool of finite size cuts on, EMC will stop with an error message there. Even if the gouge will be .0001" deep. So, I always make the approach on the lead-in and lead-out moves such that they just nip the corner of the part a tiny bit, providing an angle just over 180 degrees, so that EMC won't squawk. This requires some careful adjustment of the starting and ending points, which are not compensated by cutter radius, but must be chosen with an approximate radius in mind.

The operative commands are :

G40 - Cancel Cutter compensation

G41 - Cutter Compensation, Tool Left of Path

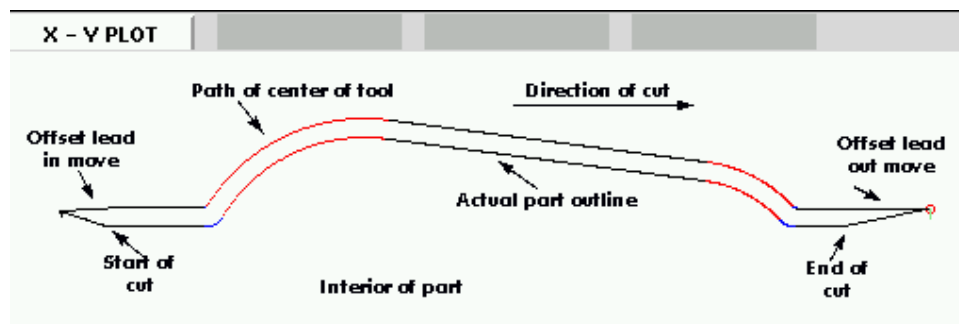
G42 - Cutter Compensation, Tool Right of Path

Here is a short file that cuts one side of a part with multiple convex and concave arcs, and several straight cuts, too. It is to clamp a high speed drilling spindle to the side of the main Bridgeport spindle. Most of these commands are straight from Bobcad/CAM, but lines N15 and N110 were added by me, and some of the coordinates around those lines had to be fudged a bit by me.

```
N10 G01 G40 X-1.3531 Y3.4
N15 F10 G17 G41 D4 X-0.7 Y3.1875 (COMP LEAD IN)
N20 X0. Y3.1875
N40 X0.5667 F10
N50 G03 X0.8225 Y3.3307 R0.3
N60 G02 X2.9728 Y4.3563 R2.1875
N70 G01 X7.212 Y3.7986
N80 G02 X8.1985 Y3.2849 R1.625
N90 G03 X8.4197 Y3.1875 R0.3
N100 G01 X9.
N110 G40 X10.1972 Y3.432 (COMP LEAD OUT)
N220 M02
```

Line 15 contains G41 D4, which means that the diameter of the tool described as tool #4 in the tool table will be used to offset the spindle by 1/2 the diameter, which is, of course, the tool's radius. Note that the line with the G41 command contains the endpoint of the move where the radius compensation is interpolated in. What this means is that at the beginning of this move, there is no compensation in effect, and at the end, the tool is offset by 100% of the selected tool radius. Immediately after the G41 is D4, meaning that the offset is by the radius of tool number 4 in the tool table. Note that tool DIAMETERS are entered in the tool table. (Jon's tool diameter is about 0.4890)

But, note that in line 110, where the G40 'cancel cutter compensation' command is, that cutter compensation will be interpolated out in this move. The way I have these set up, the moves in lines 15 and 110 are almost exactly parallel to the X axis, and the difference in Y coordinates is to line the tool up outside the portion of the program where cutter compensation is in force.



Some other things to note are that the program starts with a G40, to turn off any compensation that was in effect. This saves a lot of hassle when the program stops due to a concavity error, but

leaves the compensation turned on. Also note in line 15 that G17 is used to select the XY plane for circular interpolation. I have used the radius form of arc center specification rather than the I,J form. EMC is very picky about the radius it computes from I,J coordinates, and they must match at the beginning and end of the move to within 10^{-11} internal units, so you will have lots of problems with arbitrary arcs. Usually, if you do an arc of 90 degrees, centered at (1.0,1.0) with a radius of 1", everything will go fine, but if it has a radius that can not be expressed exactly in just a few significant digits, or the arc is a strange number of degrees, then there will be trouble with EMC. The R word clears up all that mess, and is a lot easier to work with, anyway. If the arc is more than 180 degrees, R should be negative.

20.5 Tool Compensation Sources

This unit borrows heavily from the published works of Tom Kramer and Fred Proctor at NIST and the cutter compensation web page of Jon Elson.

Papers by Tom Kramer and Fred Proctor

<http://www.isd.mel.nist.gov/personnel/kramer/publications.html>

http://www.isd.mel.nist.gov/personnel/kramer/pubs/RS274NGC_22.pdf

http://www.isd.mel.nist.gov/personnel/kramer/pubs/RS274VGER_11.pdf

Pages by Jon Elson

<http://artsci.wustl.edu/~jmelson/>

<http://206.19.206.56/diacomp.htm>

<http://206.19.206.56/lcomp.htm>

Chapter 21

Differences between EMC2 gcode and RS274NGC

21.1 Differences that change the meaning of well-formed RS274NGC programs

21.1.1 Location after a tool change

In EMC2, the machine does not return to its original position after a tool change. This change was made because the new tool might be longer than the old tool, and the move to the original machine position could therefore leave the tool tip too low.

21.1.2 Offset parameters are ininfile units

In EMC2, the values stored in parameters for the G28 and G30 home locations, the P1...P9 coordinate systems, and the G92 offset are in “infile units”. This change was made because otherwise the meaning of a location changed depending on whether G20 or G21 was active when G28, G30, G10 L2, or G92.3 is programmed.

21.1.3 Tool table lengths/diameters are in infile units

In EMC2, the tool lengths (offsets) and diameters in the tool table are specified in infile units only. This change was made because otherwise the length of a tool and its diameter would change based on whether G20 or G21 was active when initiating G43, G41, G42 modes. This made it impossible to run gcode in the machine’s non-native units, even when the gcode was simple and well-formed (starting with G20 or G21, and didn’t change units throughout the program), without changing the tool table.

21.1.4 G84, G87 not implemented

G84 and G87 are not currently implemented, but may be added to a future release of emc2.

21.1.5 G28, G30 with axis words

When G28 or G30 is programmed with only some axis words present, EMC2 only moves the named axes. This is common on other machine controls. To move some axes to an intermediate point and then move all axes to the predefined point, write two lines of gcode:

```
G0 X- Y- (axes to move to intermediate point)
G28 (move all axes to predefined point)
```

21.1.6 M62, M63 not implemented

M62 and M63 are not currently implemented, but may be added to a future release of emc2.

21.1.7 G0 reduces long angular motions to be less than one revolution

As described above, G0 reduces angular motions to less than one revolution. This can produce a different path than under RS274NGC.

21.2 Differences that do not change the meaning of well-formed RS274NGC programs

21.2.1 G33, G76 threading codes

These codes are not defined in RS274NGC.

21.2.2 G38.2

The probe tip is not retracted after a G38.2 movement. This retraction move may be added in a future release of emc2.

21.2.3 G38.3...G38.5

These codes are not defined in RS274NGC

21.2.4 O-codes

These codes are not defined in RS274NGC

21.2.5 M50...M53 overrides

These codes are not defined in RS274NGC

21.2.6 G43, G43.1

21.2.6.1 Negative Tool Lengths

The RS274NGC spec says “it is expected that” all tool lengths will be positive. However, G43 works for negative tool lengths.

21.2.6.2 Lathe tools

G43 tool length compensation can offset the tool in both the X and Z dimensions. This feature is primarily useful on lathes.

21.2.6.3 Dynamic tool lengths

EMC2 allows specification of a computed tool length through G43.1 I K.

21.2.7 G41.1, G42.1

EMC2 allows specification of a tool diameter and, if in lathe mode, orientation in the gcode. The format is G41.1/G42.1 D L, where D is diameter and L (if specified) is the lathe tool orientation.

21.2.8 G43 without H word

In ngc, this is not allowed. In EMC2, it sets length offsets for the currently loaded tool. If no tool is currently loaded, it is an error. This change was made so the user doesn't have to specify the tool number in two places for each tool change, and because it's consistent with the way G41/G42 work when the D word is not specified.

21.2.9 U, V, and W axes

EMC2 allows machines with up to 9 axes by defining an additional set of 3 linear axes known as U, V and W

Chapter 22

Coordinate System and G92 Offsets

22.1 Introduction

You have seen how handy a tool length offset can be. Having this allows the programmer to ignore the actual tool length when writing a part program. In the same way, it is really nice to be able to find a prominent part of a casting or block of material and work a program from that point rather than having to take account of the location at which the casting or block will be held during the machining.

This chapter introduces you to offsets as they are used by the EMC. These include;

- machine coordinates (G53)
- nine offsets (G54-G59.3)
- a set of global offsets (G92).

22.2 The Machine Position Command (G53)

Regardless of any offsets that may be in effect, putting a G53 in a block of code tells the interpreter to go to the real or absolute axis positions commanded in the block. For example

```
g53 g0 x0 y0 z0
```

will get you to the actual position where these three axes are zero. You might use a command like this if you have a favorite position for tool changes or if your machine has an auto tool changer. You might also use this command to get the tool out of the way so that you can rotate or change a part in a vice.

G53 is not a modal command. It must be used on each line where motion based upon absolute machine position is desired.

22.3 Fixture Offsets (G54-G59.3)

Work or fixture offset are used to make a part home that is different from the absolute, machine coordinate system. This allows the part programmer to set up home positions for multiple parts. A typical operation that uses fixture offsets would be to mill multiple copies of parts on "islands" in a piece, similar to figure [22.1](#)

The values for offsets are stored in the VAR file that is requested by the INI file during the startup of an EMC. In our example below we'll use G55. The values for each axis for G55 are stored as variable numbers.

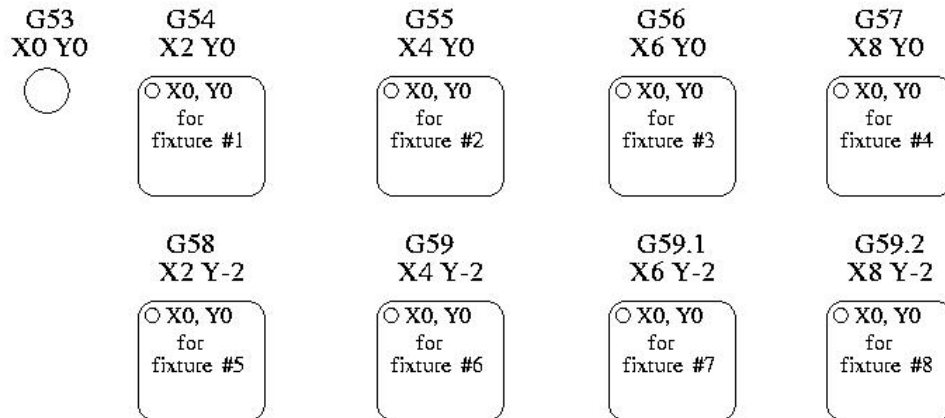


Figure 22.1: Work Offsets

```

5241  0.000000
5242  0.000000
5243  0.000000
5244  0.000000
5245  0.000000
5246  0.000000

```

In the VAR file scheme, the first variable number stores the X offset, the second the Y offset and so on for all six axes. There are numbered sets like this for each of the fixture offsets.

Each of the graphical interfaces has a way to set values for these offsets. You can also set these values by editing the VAR file itself and then issuing a [reset] so that the EMC reads the new values. For our example let's directly edit the file so that G55 takes on the following values.

```

5241  2.000000
5242  1.000000
5243  -2.000000
5244  0.000000
5245  0.000000
5246  0.000000

```

You should read this as moving the zero positions of G55 to X = 2 units, Y= 1 unit, and Z = -2 units away from the absolute zero position.

Once there are values assigned, a call to G55 in a program block would shift the zero reference by the values stored. The following line would then move each axis to the new zero position. Unlike G53, G54 through G59.3 are modal commands. They will act on all blocks of code after one of them has been set. The program that might be run using figure 22.1 would require only a single coordinate reference for each of the locations and all of the work to be done there. The following code is offered as an example of making a square using the G55 offsets that we set above.

```

G55 G0 x0 y0 z0
g1 f2 z-0.2000
x1

```

```

y1
x0
y0
g0 z0
g54 x0 y0 z0
m2

```

“But,” you say, “why is there a G54 in there near the end.” Many programmers leave the G54 coordinate system with all zero values so that there is a modal code for the absolute machine based axis positions. This program assumes that we have done that and use the ending command as a command to machine zero. It would have been possible to use g53 and arrive at the same place but that command would not have been modal and any commands issued after it would have returned to using the G55 offsets because that coordinate system would still be in effect.

```

G54   use preset work coordinate system 1
G55   use preset work coordinate system 2
G56   use preset work coordinate system 3
G57   use preset work coordinate system 4
G58   use preset work coordinate system 5
G59   use preset work coordinate system 6
G59.1 use preset work coordinate system 7
G59.2 use preset work coordinate system 8
G59.3 use preset work coordinate system 9

```

22.3.1 Default coordinate system

One other variable in the VAR file becomes important when we think about offset systems. This variable is named 5220. In the default files its value is set to 1.00000. This means that when the EMC starts up it should use the first coordinate system as its default. If you set this to 9.00000 it would use the ninth offset system as its default for startup and reset. Any value other than an interger (decimal really) between 1 and 9 will cause the EMC to fault on startup.

22.3.2 Setting coordinate system values within G-code.

In the general programming chapter we listed a G10 command word. This command can be used to change the values of the offsets in a coordinate system. (add here)

22.4 G92 Offsets

G92 is the most misunderstood and maligned part of EMC programming. The way that it works has changed just a bit from the early days to the current releases. This change has confused many users. It should be thought of as a temporary offset that is applied to all other offsets.

In response to criticism of it, Ray Henry studied it by comparing the way the interpreter authors expected it to work and the way that it worked on his Grizzly minimill. The following quoted paragraphs are extracted from his paper which is available in several text formats in the dropbox at <http://www.linuxcnc.org>.

22.4.1 The G92 commands

This set of commands include;

G92 This command, when used with axis names, sets values to offset variables.

G92.1 This command sets zero values to the g92 variables.

G92.2 This command suspends but does not zero out the g92 variables.

G92.3 This command applies offset values that have been suspended.

When the commands are used as described above, they will work pretty much as you would expect.

A user must understand the correct ways that the g92 values work. They are set based upon the location of each axis when the g92 command is invoked. The NIST document is clear that, "To make the current point have the coordinates" x0, y0, and z0 you would use g92 x0 y0 z0. *G92 does not work from absolute machine coordinates. It works from current location.*

G92 also works from current location as modified by any other offsets that are in effect when the g92 command is invoked. While testing for differences between work offsets and actual offsets it was found that a g54 offset could cancel out a g92 and thus give the appearance that no offsets were in effect. However, the g92 was still in effect for all coordinates and did produce expected work offsets for the other coordinate systems.

It is likely that the absence of home switches and proper home procedures will result in very large errors in the application of g92 values if they exist in the var file. Many EMC users do not have home switches in place on their machines. For them home should be found by moving each axis to a location and issuing the home command. When each axis is in a known location, the home command will recalculate how the g92 values are applied and will produce consistent results. Without a home sequence, the values are applied to the position of the machine when the EMC begins to run.

22.4.2 Setting G92 values

There are at least two ways to set G92 values.

- right mouse click on position displays of tkemc will popup a window into which you can type a value.
- the g92 command

Both of these work from the current location of the axis to which the offset is to be applied.

Issuing g92 x y z a b c does in fact set values to the g92 variables such that each axis takes on the value associated with its name. These values are assigned to the current position of the machine axis. These results satisfy paragraphs one and two of the NIST document.

G92 commands work from current axis location and add and subtract correctly to give the current axis position the value assigned by the g92 command. The effects work even though previous offsets are in.

So if the X axis is currently showing 2.0000 as its position a G92 x0 will set an offset of -2.0000 so that the current location of X becomes zero. A G92 X2 will set an offset of 0.0000 and the displayed position will not change. A G92 X5.0000 will set an offset of 3.0000 so that the current displayed position becomes 5.0000.

22.4.3 G92 Cautions

Sometimes the values of a G92 offset get stuck in the VAR file. When this happens reset or a startup will cause them to become active again. The variables are named

```
5211  0.000000
5212  0.000000
5213  0.000000
5214  0.000000
5215  0.000000
5216  0.000000
```

where 5211 is the X axis offset and so on. If you are seeing unexpected positions as the result of a commanded move, or even unexpected numbers in the position displays when you start up, look at these variables in the VAR file and see if they contain values. If they do, set them to zeros and the problems should go away.

With these tests we can see that reset returns g92 to the condition that it had when the interpreter started up. The reader should note that we have established ... that no write of these values occurs during a normal run so if no g92 was set at the startup, none will be read in during a reset.

It may be that this is the heart of the problem that some have experienced with differences between the old and the new interpreter. It may well be, but I leave it to others to test, that the old interpreter and task programs immediately wrote values to the var file and then found those values during a reset.

On the other hand, if G92 values existed in the VAR file when the EMC started up

... starting the EMC with g92 values in the var file is that it will apply the values to current location of each axis. If this is home position and home position is set as machine zero everything will be correct. Once home has been established using real machine switches or moving each axis to a known home position and issuing an axis home command, g92 commands and values work as advertised.

These tests did not study the effect of re-reading the var file while they contain numbers. This could cause problems if g92 offsets had been removed with g92.1 but the var file still contained the previous numbers.

It is this complexity that causes us to say that G92 values must be treated as temporary. They should be used to set global short term offsets. The G54-59.3 coordinate systems should be used whenever long lasting and predictable offsets are needed.

22.5 Sample Program Using Offsets

This sample engraving project mills a set of four .1 radius circles in roughly a star shape around a center circle. We can setup the individual circle pattern like this.

```
G10 L2 P1 x0 y0 z0 (ensure that g54 is set to machine zero)
g0 x-.1 y0 z0
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g0 z0
m2
```

We can issue a set of commands to create offsets for the four other circles like this.

```
G10 L2 P2 x0.5 (offsets g55 x value by 0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P3 x-0.5 (offsets g56 x value by -0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P4 y0.5 (offsets g57 y value by 0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P5 y-0.5 (offsets g58 y value by -0.5 inch)
```

We put these together in the following program.

```
(a program for milling five small circles in a diamond shape)
G10 L2 P1 x0 y0 z0 (ensure that g54 is machine zero)
G10 L2 P2 x0.5 (offsets g55 x value by 0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P3 x-0.5 (offsets g56 x value by -0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P4 y0.5 (offsets g57 y value by 0.5 inch)
G10 L2 P5 y-0.5 (offsets g58 y value by -0.5 inch)
g54 g0 x-.1 y0 z0 (center circle)
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g0 z0
g55 g0 x-.1 y0 z0 (first offset circle)
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g0 z0
g56 g0 x-.1 y0 z0 (second offset circle)
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g0 z0
g57 g0 x-.1 y0 z0 (third offset circle)
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g0 z0
g58 g0 x-.1 y0 z0 (fourth offset circle)
g1 f1 z-.25
g3 x-.1 y0 i.1 j0
g54 g0 x0 y0 z0
m2
```

Now comes the time when we might apply a set of G92 offsets to this program. You'll see that it is running in each case at z0. If the mill were at the zero position, a g92 z1.0000 issued at the head of the program would shift everything down an inch. You might also shift the whole pattern around in the XY plane by adding some x and y offsets with g92. If you do this you should add a G92.1 command just before the m2 that ends the program. If you do not, other programs that you might run after this one will also use that g92 offset. Furthermore it would save the g92 values when you shut down the EMC and they will be recalled when you start up again.

Chapter 23

Canned Cycles

Canned Cycles G81 through G89 have been implemented for milling. This section describes how each cycle has been implemented. In addition G80 and G98/G99 are considered here because their primary use is related to canned cycles.

All canned cycles are performed with respect to the XY plane. With the current 3 axis interpreter, no A, B, C-axis motion is allowed during canned cycles. Inverse time feed rate is not allowed. Cutter radius compensation is not allowed. Each of the canned cycles defines a new machine motion mode. As a motion mode, they will stay in effect until replaced by another motion G word or by G80 as described below.

All canned cycles use X, Y, R, and Z values in the NC code. These values are used to determine X, Y, R, and Z positions. The R (usually meaning retract) position is along the Z-axis. Some canned cycles use additional arguments that are listed with the specific cycle.

In absolute distance mode, the X, Y, R, and Z values are absolute positions in the current coordinate system. In incremental distance mode, X, Y, and R values are treated as increments to the current position and Z as an increment from the Z-axis position before the move involving Z takes place.

A repeat feature has been implemented. The L word represents the number of repeats. If the repeat feature is used, it is normally used in incremental distance mode, so that the same sequence of motions is repeated in several equally spaced places along a straight line. EMC allows $L > 1$ in absolute distance mode to mean "do the same cycle in the same place several times." Omitting the L value is equivalent to specifying $L=1$.

When $L > 1$ in incremental mode, the X and Y positions are determined by adding the given X and Y values either to the current X and Y positions (on the first go-around) or to the X and Y positions at the end of the previous go-around (on the second and successive go-arounds). The R and Z positions do not change during the repeats.

The number of repeats of a canned cycle only works for in the block containing L word. If you want to repeat a canned cycle using the repeat feature by placing a new L word on each line for which you want repeats.

The height of the retract move at the end of each repeat (called "clear Z" in the descriptions below) is determined by the setting of the retract_mode: either to the original Z position (if that is above the R position and the retract_mode is G98, OLD_Z), or otherwise to the R position. (See G98/G99 below)

23.1 Preliminary Motion

Preliminary motion may be confusing on first read. It should come clear as you work through the examples in G80 and G81 below. Preliminary motion is a set of motions that is common to all

of the milling canned cycles. These motions are computed at the time the canned cycle block is encountered by the interpreter. They move the tool into the proper location for the execution of the canned cycle itself.

These motions will be different depending on whether the canned cycle is to be executed using absolute distances or incremental distances. These motions will also be affected by the initial position of the z axis when the canned cycle block is encountered in a program.

If the current Z position is below the R position, the Z axis is traversed to the R position. This happens only once, regardless of the value of L.

In addition, for each repeat as specified by L, one or two moves are made before the rest of the cycle:

1. a straight traverse parallel to the XY-plane to the given XY-position
2. a straight traverse of the Z-axis only to the R position, if it is not already at the R position.

23.2 G80

G80 turns off all motion. You should think of it as the off position on a rotary switch where the other positions are the different possible motion modes. In the EMC interpreter, G80 is one of the modal codes so any other code will replace it. The result of the following lines of code is the same.

```
N1000 G90 G81 X1 Y1 Z1.5 R2.8 (absolute distance canned cycle)
N1001 G80 (turn off canned cycle motion)
N1002 G0 X0 Y0 Z0 (turn on rapid traverse and move to coordinate home)
```

produces the same final position and machine state as

```
N1000 G90 G81 X1 Y1 Z1.5 R2.8 (absolute distance canned cycle)
N1001 G0 X0 Y0 Z0 (turn on rapid traverse and move to coordinate home)
```

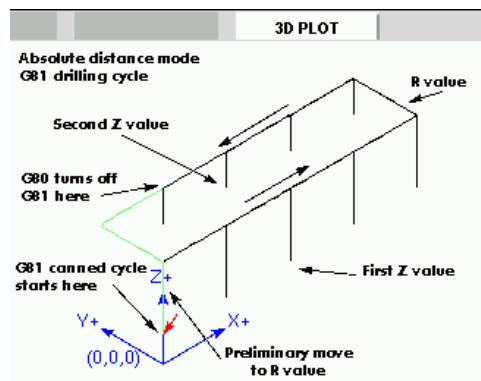
The advantage of the first set is that, the G80 line clearly turns off the G81 canned cycle. With the first set of blocks, the programmer must turn motion back on with G0, as is done in the next line, or any other motion mode G word.

Example 1 - Use of a canned cycle as a modal motion code

If a canned cycle is not turned off with G80 or another motion word, the canned cycle will attempt to repeat itself using the next block of code that contains an X, Y, or Z word. The following file drills (G81) a set of eight holes as shown. (note the z position change after the first four holes.)

```
N100 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z0 (coordinate home)
N110 G1 X0 G4 P0.1
N120 G81 X1 Y0 Z0 R1 (canned drill cycle)
N130 X2

N140 X3
N150 X4
N160 Y1 Z0.5
N170 X3
N180 X2
N190 X1
N200 G80 (turn off canned cycle)
N210 G0 X0 (rapid home moves)
N220 Y0
N220 Z0
N220 M2 (program end)
```



The use of G80 in line n200 is optional because the G0 on the next line will turn off the G81 cycle. But using the G80, as example 1 shows, will provide for an easily readable canned cycle. Without it, it is not so obvious that all of the blocks between N120 and N200 belong to the canned cycle.

If you use G80 and do not set another modal motion code soon after, you may get one of the following error messages.

Cannot use axis commands with G80
Coordinate setting given with G80

These should serve as a reminder that you need to write in a new motion word.

23.3 G81 Cycle

The G81 cycle is intended for drilling.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.

2. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z. This cycle was used in the description of G80 above but is explained in detail here.

Example 2 - Absolute Position G81

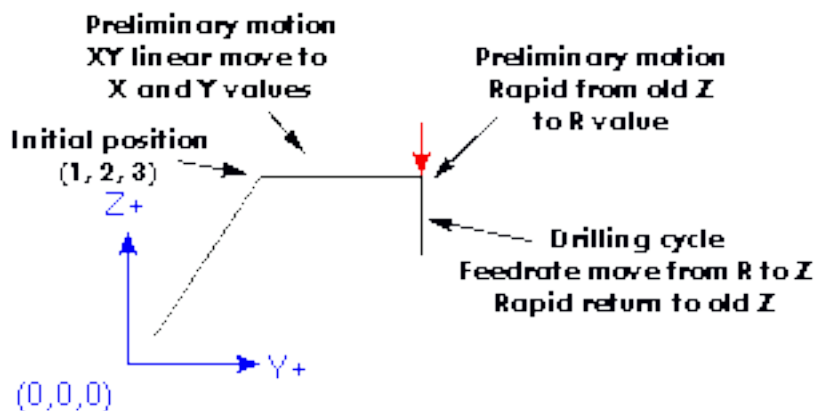
Suppose the current position is (1, 2, 3) and the following line of NC code is interpreted.

G90 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z1.5 R2.8

This calls for absolute distance mode (G90) and OLD_Z retract mode (G98) and calls for the G81 drilling cycle to be performed once. The X value and X position are 4. The Y value and Y position are 5. The Z value and Z position are 1.5. The R value and clear Z are 2.8. OLD_Z is 3.

The following moves take place.

1. a traverse parallel to the XY plane to (4,5,3)
2. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,2.8).
3. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,1.5)
4. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (4,5,3)



Example 2 - Absolute Position G81

Suppose the current position is (1, 2, 3) and the following line of NC code is interpreted.

G91 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z-0.6 R1.8 L3

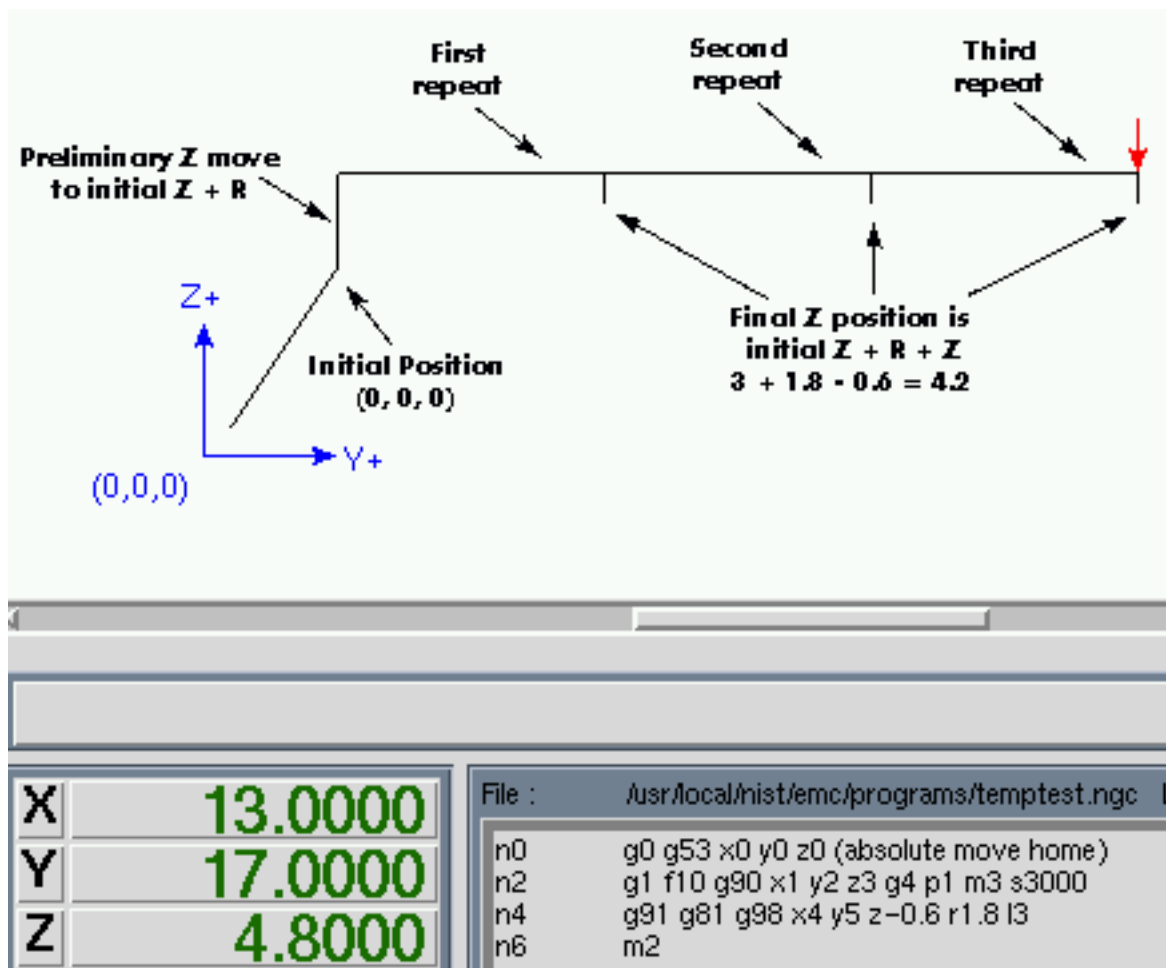
This calls for incremental distance mode (G91) and OLD_Z retract mode (G98). It also calls for the G81 drilling cycle to be repeated three times. The X value is 4, the Y value is 5, the Z value is -0.6

and the R value is 1.8. The initial X position is 5 ($=1+4$), the initial Y position is 7 ($=2+5$), the clear Z position is 4.8 ($=1.8+3$), and the Z position is 4.2 ($=4.8-0.6$). OLD_Z is 3.

The first preliminary move is a traverse along the Z axis to (1,2,4.8), since $OLD_Z < \text{clear } Z$.

The first repeat consists of 3 moves.

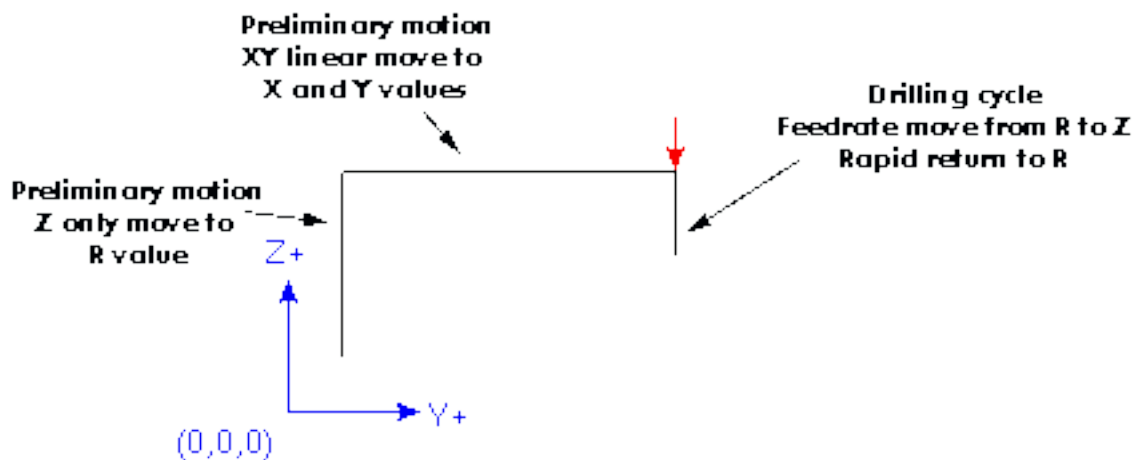
1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (5,7,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (5,7, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (5,7,4.8) The second repeat consists of 3 moves. The X position is reset to 9 ($=5+4$) and the Y position to 12 ($=7+5$).
1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (9,12,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (9,12, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (9,12,4.8) The third repeat consists of 3 moves. The X position is reset to 13 ($=9+4$) and the Y position to 17 ($=12+5$).
1. a traverse parallel to the XY-plane to (13,17,4.8)
2. a feed parallel to the Z-axis to (13,17, 4.2)
3. a traverse parallel to the Z-axis to (13,17,4.8)



Example 3 - Relative Position G81

Now suppose that you execute the first g81 block of code but from (0, 0, 0) rather than from (1, 2, 3).

G90 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z1.5 R2.8 Since OLD_Z is below the R value, it adds nothing for the motion but since the initial value of Z is less than the value specified in R, there will be an initial Z move during the preliminary moves.

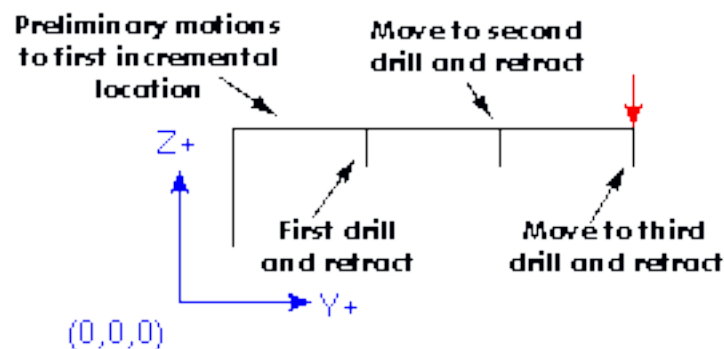


Example 4 - Absolute G81 R > Z

This is a plot of the path of motion for the second g81 block of code.

G91 G81 G98 X4 Y5 Z-0.6 R1.8 L3

Since this plot starts with (0, 0, 0), the interpreter adds the initial Z 0 and R 1.8 and rapids to that location. After that initial z move, the repeat feature works the same as it did in example 3 with the final z depth being 0.6 below the R value.



Example 5 - Relative position R > Z

23.4 G82 Cycle

The G82 cycle is intended for drilling.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.

2. Dwell for the given number of seconds.

3. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z. The motion of a G82 canned cycle looks just like g81 with the addition of a dwell at the bottom of the Z move. The length of the dwell is specified by a p# word in the g82 block.

G90 G82 G98 X4 Y5 Z1.5 R2.8 P2

Would be equivalent to example 2 above with a dwell added at the bottom of the hole.

23.5 G83 Cycle

The G83 cycle is intended for deep drilling or milling with chip breaking. The dwell in this cycle causes any long stringers (which are common when drilling in aluminum) to be cut off. This cycle takes a Q value which represents a "delta" increment along the Z-axis. Machinists often refer to this as peck drilling.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate downward by delta or to the Z position, whichever is less deep.

2. Dwell for 0.25 second.

3. Retract at traverse rate to clear Z

4. Repeat steps 1 - 3 until the Z position is reached.

5. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.

NIST lists the elements of the command as G83 X- Y- Z- A- B- C- R- L- Q-

I find this command very handy for many of my deep drilling projects. I have not tried to use the L for a repeat so can't say much about that feature. A typical g83 line that I would write might look like G83 X0.285 Y0.00 Z-0.500 R0.2 L1 Q0.05. EMC moves to position X0.285 Y0.00 at the z height before the block. It then pecks its way down to Z-0.500. Each peck pulls the drill tip up to R0.2 after moving Q0.05.

23.6 G84 Cycle

The G84 cycle is intended for right-hand tapping.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Start speed-feed synchronization.

2. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.

3. Stop the spindle.

4. Start the spindle counterclockwise.

5. Retract the Z-axis at the current feed rate to clear Z.

6. If speed-feed synch was not on before the cycle started, stop it.

7. Stop the spindle.

8. Start the spindle clockwise.

23.7 G85 Cycle

The G85 cycle is intended for boring or reaming.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
2. Retract the Z-axis at the current feed rate to clear Z. This motion is very similar to g81 except that the tool is retracted from the hole at feed rate rather than rapid.

23.8 G86 Cycle

The G86 cycle is intended for boring.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
2. Dwell for the given number of seconds.
3. Stop the spindle turning.
4. Retract the Z-axis at traverse rate to clear Z.
5. Restart the spindle in the direction it was going. This cycle is very similar to g82 except that it stops the spindle before it retracts the tool and restarts the spindle when it reaches the clearance value R.

23.9 G87 Cycle

The G87 cycle is intended for back boring.

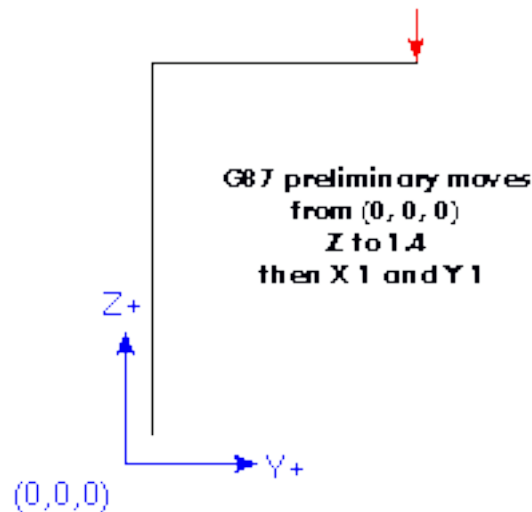
The situation is that you have a through hole and you want to counter bore the bottom of hole. To do this you put an L-shaped tool in the spindle with a cutting surface on the UPPER side of its base. You stick it carefully through the hole when it is not spinning and is oriented so it fits through the hole, then you move it so the stem of the L is on the axis of the hole, start the spindle, and feed the tool upward to make the counter bore. Then you stop the tool, get it out of the hole, and restart it.

This cycle uses I and J values to indicate the position for inserting and removing the tool. I and J will always be increments from the X position and the Y position, regardless of the distance mode setting. This cycle also uses a K value to specify the position along the Z-axis of the top of counterbore. The K value is an absolute Z-value in absolute distance mode, and an increment (from the Z position) in incremental distance mode.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.

1. Move at traverse rate parallel to the XY-plane to the point indicated by I and J.
2. Stop the spindle in a specific orientation.
3. Move the Z-axis only at traverse rate downward to the Z position.
4. Move at traverse rate parallel to the XY-plane to the X,Y location.
5. Start the spindle in the direction it was going before.
6. Move the Z-axis only at the given feed rate upward to the position indicated by K.
7. Move the Z-axis only at the given feed rate back down to the Z position.
8. Stop the spindle in the same orientation as before.

9. Move at traverse rate parallel to the XY-plane to the point indicated by I and J.
10. Move the Z-axis only at traverse rate to the clear Z.
11. Move at traverse rate parallel to the XY-plane to the specified X,Y location.
12. Restart the spindle in the direction it was going before.



Example 6 - Backbore

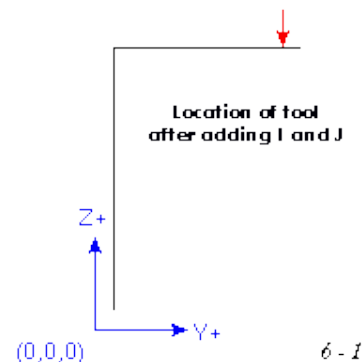
Example six uses a incremental distances from (0, 0, 0) so the preliminary moves look much like those in example five but they are done using the G87 backbore canned cycle.

G91 G87 M3 S1000 X1 Y1 Z-0.4 R1.4 I-0.1 J-0.1 K-0.1

You will notice that the preliminary moves shift the tool to directly above the center axis of the existing bore.

Next it increments that location by the I and J values. I offsets X with a plus value being added to the current X. J does the same for the Y axis.

For our example block both I and J are negative so they move back from the hole axis along the path just made by the tool. The amount of offset required should be just enough that the tool tip will slide down through the bore.

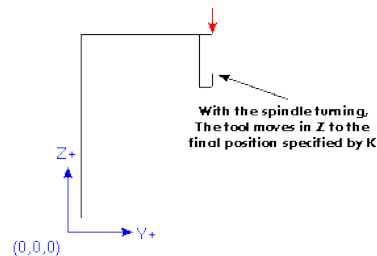


Next the car
bottom loca
it moves the

6-1

Now the g87 canned cycle turns the spindle on and moves back up into the bore at the programmed feed rate. This is the real cutting action of this canned cycle. With the proper tool in a boring bar this cycle will produce a chamfer on the bottom side of the bore. G87 can also be used to produce a larger diameter bore on the bottom side of the bore.

When the tool has reached the K position it is returned to the bottom location, the spindle is stopped and oriented and follows the earlier path back out of the bore to the initial position above.



This canned cycle assumes spindle orientation which has not been implemented in the EMC to date. The proper alignment of the tool tip to the oriented spindle is critical to the successful insertion of the tool through the hole to be backbored.

23.10 G88 Cycle

The G88 cycle is intended for boring. This cycle uses a P value, where P specifies the number of seconds to dwell.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.
1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
2. Dwell for the given number of seconds.
3. Stop the spindle turning.
4. Stop the program so the operator can retract the spindle manually.
5. Restart the spindle in the direction it was going. It is unclear how the operator is to manually move the tool because a change to manual mode resets the program to the top. We will attempt to clarify that step in this procedure.

23.11 G89 Cycle

The G89 cycle is intended for boring. This cycle uses a P value, where P specifies the number of seconds to dwell.

0. Preliminary motion, as described above.
1. Move the Z-axis only at the current feed rate to the Z position.
2. Dwell for the given number of seconds.
3. Retract the Z-axis at the current feed rate to clear Z. This cycle is like G82 except that the tool is drawn back at feed rate rather than rapid.

23.12 G98 G99

G98 - initial level return in canned cycles

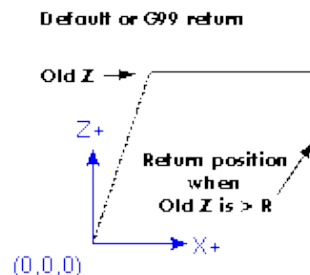
G99 - R value return in canned cycles

These codes are treated together because they behave very much alike. You will recall that when Z is above R the preparatory move is from the current location to the X, Y values. If G98 is not specified, then the canned cycle will return to the R value rather than the Z value that was used on the approach.

N01 G0 X1 Y2 Z3

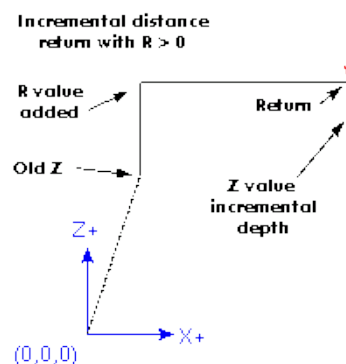
N02 G90 G81 X4 Y5 Z-0.6 R1.8

Adding G98 to the second line above means that the return move will be to the value of OLD_Z since it is higher than the R value specified.



Neither code will have any affect when incremental moves with a positive R value are specified because the R value is added to OLD_Z and that result is used as the initial level for a G98. The same value is the computed R value so G99 will also return to the same place.

When the value of R is less than OLD_Z and incremental distance mode is turned on, G98 will return the tool to the value of OLD_Z. Under those conditions G99 will retract the tool to OLD_Z plus the negative R value. The return will be below OLD_Z.



23.13 Why use a canned cycle?

There are at least two reasons for using canned cycles. The first is the economy of code. A single bore would take several lines of code to execute.

Example 1 above demonstrated how a canned cycle could be used to produce 8 holes with ten lines of nc code within the canned cycle mode. The program below will produce the same set of 8 holes using five lines for the canned cycle. It does not follow exactly the same path nor does it drill in the same order as the earlier example. But the program writing economy of a good canned cycle should be obvious.

Example 7 - Eight Holes Revisited

n100 g90 g0 x0 y0 z0 (move coordinate home)

n110 g1 f10 x0 g4 p0.1

n120 g91 g81 x1 y0 z-1 r1 l4(canned drill cycle)

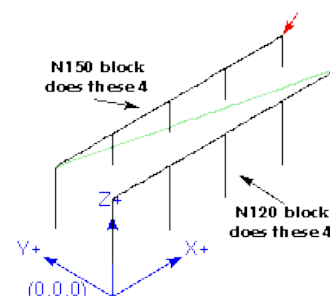
n130 g90 g0 x0 y1

n140 z0

n150 g91 g81 x1 y0 z-.5 r1 l4(canned drill cycle)

n160 g80 (turn off canned cycle)

n170 m2 (program end)



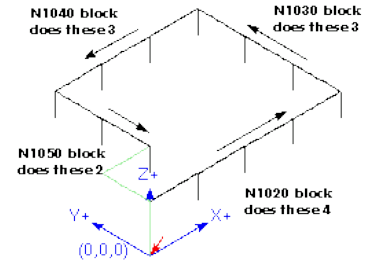
Example 8 - Twelve holes in a square

This example demonstrates the use of the L word to repeat a set of incremental drill cycles for successive blocks of code within the same G81 motion mode. Here we produce 12 holes using five lines of code in the canned motion mode.

```

N1000 G90 G0 X0 Y0 Z0 (move coordinate home)
N1010 G1 F50 X0 G4 P0.1
N1020 G91 G81 X1 Y0 Z-0.5 R1 L4 (canned drill cycle)
N1030 X0 Y1 R0 L3 (repeat)
N1040 X-1 Y0 L3 (repeat)
N1050 X0 Y-1 L2 (repeat)
N1060 G80 (turn off canned cycle)
N1070 G90 G0 X0 (rapid home)
N1080 Y0
N1090 Z0
N1100 M2 (program end)

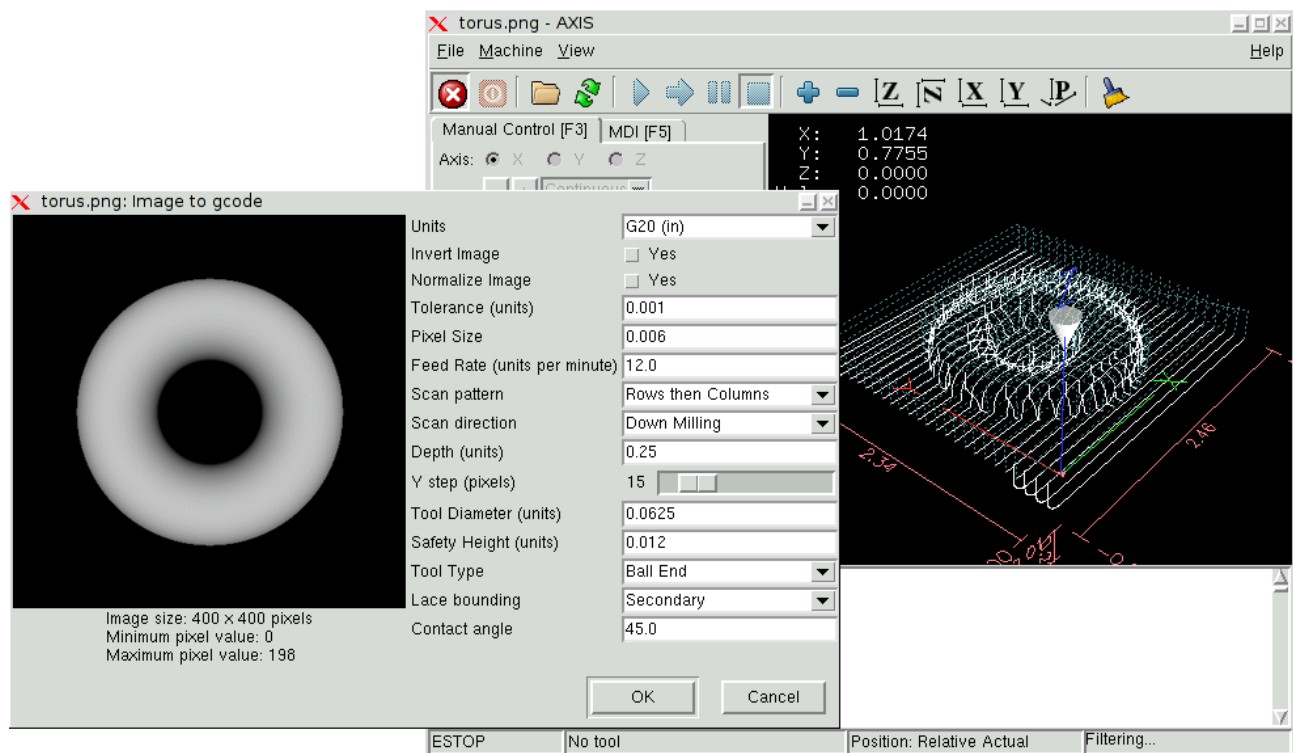
```



The second reason to use a canned cycle is that they all produce preliminary moves and returns that you can anticipate and control regardless of the start point of the canned cycle.

Chapter 24

Image-to-gcode: Milling “depth maps”



24.1 What is a depth map?

A depth map is a greyscale image where the brightness of each pixel corresponds to the depth (or height) of the object at each point.

24.2 Integrating image-to-gcode with the AXIS user interface

Add the following lines to the [FILTER] section of your .ini file to make AXIS automatically invoke image-to-gcode when you open a .png, .gif, or .jpg image:

```
PROGRAM_EXTENSION = .png,.gif,.jpg Grayscale Depth Image
png = image-to-gcode
gif = image-to-gcode
jpg = image-to-gcode
```

The standard `sim/axis.ini` configuration file is already configured this way.

24.3 Using image-to-gcode

Start image-to-gcode either by opening an image file in AXIS, or by invoking image-to-gcode from the terminal, as follows:

```
image-to-gcode torus.png > torus.ngc
```

Verify all the settings in the right-hand column, then press OK to create the gcode. Depending on the image size and options chosen, this may take from a few seconds to a few minutes. If you are loading the image in AXIS, the gcode will automatically be loaded and previewed once image-to-gcode completes. In AXIS, hitting reload will show the image-to-gcode option screen again, allowing you to tweak them.

24.4 Option Reference

24.4.1 Units

Specifies whether to use G20 (inches) or G21 (mm) in the generated g-code and as the units for each option labeled **(units)**.

24.4.2 Invert Image

If “no”, the black pixel is the lowest point and the white pixel is the highest point. If “yes”, the black pixel is the highest point and the white pixel is the lowest point.

24.4.3 Normalize Image

If “yes”, the darkest pixel is remapped to black, the lightest pixel is remapped to white.

24.4.4 Expand Image Border

If “None”, the input image is used as-is, and details which are at the very edges of the image may be cut off. If “White” or “Black”, then a border of pixels equal to the tool diameter is added on all sides, and details which are at the very edges of the images will not be cut off.

24.4.5 Tolerance (units)

When a series of points are within **tolerance** of being a straight line, they are output as a straight line. Increasing tolerance can lead to better contouring performance in emc, but can also remove or blur small details in the image.

24.4.6 Pixel Size (units)

One pixel in the input image will be this many units—usually this number is much smaller than 1.0. For instance, to mill a 2.5x2.5-inch object from a 400x400 image file, use a pixel size of .00625, because $2.5 / 400 = .00625$.

24.4.7 Plunge Feed Rate (units per minute)

The feed rate for the initial plunge movement

24.4.8 Feed Rate (units per minute)

The feed rate for other parts of the path

24.4.9 Spindle Speed (RPM)

24.4.10 Scan Pattern

Possible scan patterns are:

- Rows
- Columns
- Rows, then Columns
- Columns, then Rows

24.4.11 Scan Direction

Possible scan directions are:

- Positive: Start milling at a low X or Y axis value, and move towards a high X or Y axis value
- Negative: Start milling at a high X or Y axis value, and move towards a low X or Y axis value
- Alternating: Start on the same end of the X or Y axis travel that the last move ended on. This reduces the amount of traverse movements
- Up Milling: Start milling at low points, moving towards high points
- Down Milling: Start milling at high points, moving towards low points

24.4.12 Depth (units)

The top of material is always at **Z=0**. The deepest cut into the material is **Z=-depth**.

24.4.13 Step Over (pixels)

The distance between adjacent rows or columns. To find the number of pixels for a given units distance, compute **distance/pixel size** and round to the nearest whole number. For example, if **pixel size=.006** and the desired step over **distance=.015**, then use a Step Over of 2 or 3 pixels, because $.015/.006=2.5$.

24.4.14 Tool Diameter

The diameter of the cutting part of the tool.

24.4.15 Safety Height

The height to move to for traverse movements. image-to-gcode always assumes the top of material is at **Z=0**.

24.4.16 Tool Type

The shape of the cutting part of the tool. Possible tool shapes are:

- Ball End
- Flat End
- 45 degree “vee”
- 60 degree “vee”

24.4.17 Lace bounding

This controls whether areas that are relatively flat along a row or column are skipped. This option only makes sense when both rows and columns are being milled. Possible bounding options are:

- None: Rows and columns are both fully milled.
- Secondary: When milling in the second direction, areas that do not strongly slope in that direction are skipped.
- Full: When milling in the first direction, areas that strongly slope in the second direction are skipped. When milling in the second direction, areas that do not strongly slope in that direction are skipped.

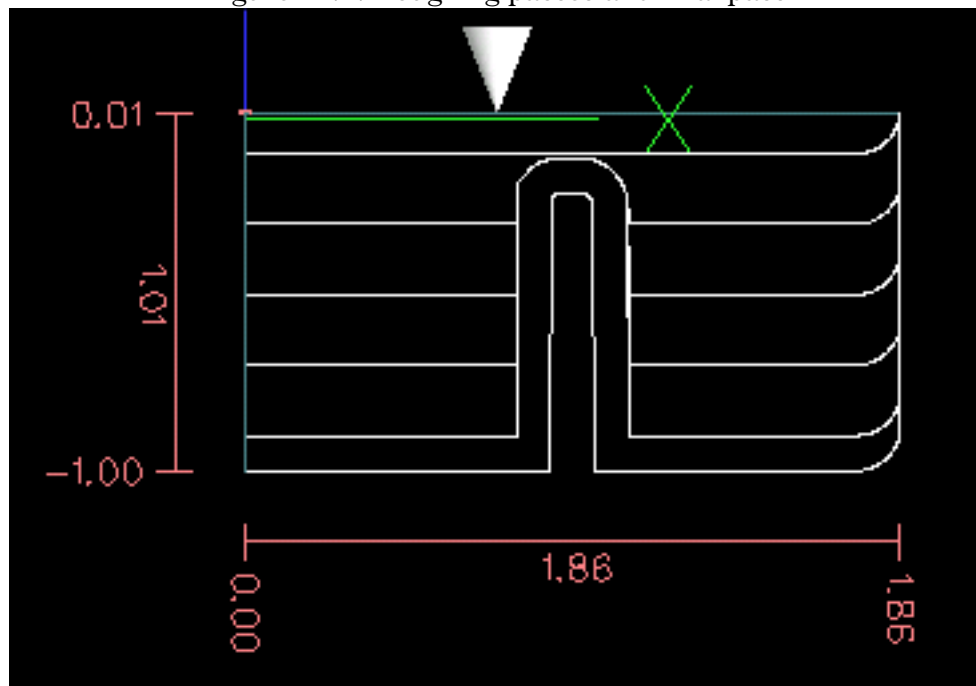
24.4.18 Contact angle

When **Lace bounding** is not None, slopes greater than **Contact angle** are considered to be “strong” slopes, and slopes less than that angle are considered to be weak slopes.

24.4.19 Roughing offset and depth per pass

Image-to-gcode can optionally perform roughing passes. The depth of successive roughing passes is given by “Roughing depth per pass”. For instance, entering 0.2 will perform the first roughing pass with a depth of 0.2, the second roughing pass with a depth of 0.4, and so on until the full Depth of the image is reached. No part of any roughing pass will cut closer than Roughing Offset to the final part. Figure 24.1 shows a tall vertical feature being milled. In this image, Roughing depth per pass is 0.2 inches and roughing offset is 0.1 inches.

Figure 24.1: Roughing passes and final pass



Appendix A

Glossary of Common Terms Used in the EMC Documents

A listing of terms and what they mean. Some terms have a general meaning and several additional meanings for users, installers, and developers.

Acme Screw A type of lead-screw [A](#) that uses an acme thread form. Acme threads have somewhat lower friction and wear than simple triangular threads, but ball-screws [A](#) are lower yet. Most manual machine tools use acme lead-screws.

Axis One of the computer control movable parts of the machine. For a typical vertical mill, the table is the X axis, the saddle is the Y axis, and the quill or knee is the Z axis. Additional linear axes parallel to X, Y, and Z are called U, V, and W respectively. Angular axes like rotary tables are referred to as A, B, and C.

Backlash The amount of "play" or lost motion that occurs when direction is reversed in a lead screw [A](#), or other mechanical motion driving system. It can result from nuts that are loose on leadscrews, slippage in belts, cable slack, "wind-up" in rotary couplings, and other places where the mechanical system is not "tight". Backlash will result in inaccurate motion, or in the case of motion caused by external forces (think cutting tool pulling on the work piece) the result can be broken cutting tools. This can happen because of the sudden increase in chip load on the cutter as the work piece is pulled across the backlash distance by the cutting tool.

Backlash Compensation - Any technique that attempts to reduce the effect of backlash without actually removing it from the mechanical system. This is typically done in software in the controller. This can correct the final resting place of the part in motion but fails to solve problems related to direction changes while in motion (think circular interpolation) and motion that is caused when external forces (think cutting tool pulling on the work piece) are the source of the motion.

Ball Screw A type of lead-screw that uses small hardened steel balls between the nut [A](#) and screw to reduce friction. Ball-screws have very low friction and backlash [A](#), but are usually quite expensive.

Ball Nut A special nut designed for use with a ball-screw. It contains an internal passage to re-circulate the balls from one end of the screw to the other.

CNC Computer Numerical Control. The general term used to refer to computer control of machinery. Instead of a human operator turning cranks to move a cutting tool, CNC uses a computer and motors to move the tool, based on a part program [A](#).

Coordinate Measuring Machine A Coordinate Measuring Machine is used to make many accurate measurements on parts. These machines can be used to create CAD data for parts where no

drawings can be found, when a hand-made prototype needs to be digitized for moldmaking, or to check the accuracy of machined or molded parts.

Display units The linear and angular units used for onscreen display.

DRO A Digital Read Out is a device attached to the slides of a machine tool or other device which has parts that move in a precise manner to indicate the current location of the tool with respect to some reference position. Nearly all DRO's use linear quadrature encoders to pick up position information from the machine.

EDM EDM is a method of removing metal in hard or difficult to machine or tough metals, or where rotating tools would not be able to produce the desired shape in a cost-effective manner. An excellent example is rectangular punch dies, where sharp internal corners are desired. Milling operations can not give sharp internal corners with finite diameter tools. A wire EDM machine can make internal corners with a radius only slightly larger than the wire's radius. A 'sinker' EDM can make corners with a radius only slightly larger than the radius on the corner of the convex EDM electrode.

EMC The Enhanced Machine Controller. Initially a NIST [A](#) project. EMC is able to run a wide range of motion devices.

EMCIO The module within EMC [A](#) that handles general purpose I/O, unrelated to the actual motion of the axes.

EMCMOT The module within EMC [A](#) that handles the actual motion of the cutting tool. It runs as a real-time program and directly controls the motors.

Encoder A device to measure position. Usually a mechanical-optical device, which outputs a quadrature signal. The signal can be counted by special hardware, or directly by the par-port with emc2.

Feed Relatively slow, controlled motion of the tool used when making a cut.

Feed rate The speed at which a motion occurs. In manual mode, jog speed can be set from the graphical interface. In auto or mdi mode feed rate is commanded using a (f) word. F10 would mean ten units per minute.

Feedback A method (e.g., quadrature encoder signals) by which emc receives information about the position of motors

Feed rate Override A manual, operator controlled change in the rate at which the tool moves while cutting. Often used to allow the operator to adjust for tools that are a little dull, or anything else that requires the feed rate to be "tweaked".

G-Code The generic term used to refer to the most common part programming language. There are several dialects of G-code, EMC uses RS274/NGC [A](#).

GUI Graphical User Interface.

General A type of interface that allows communications between a computer and human (in most cases) via the manipulation of icons and other elements (widgets) on a computer screen.

EMC An application that presents a graphical screen to the machine operator allowing manipulation of machine and the corresponding controlling program.

Home A specific location in the machine's work envelope that is used to make sure the computer and the actual machine both agree on the tool position.

ini file A text file that contains most of the information that configures EMC [A](#) for a particular machine

Joint Coordinates These specify the angles between the individual joints of the machine. See also Kinematics [A](#)

Jog Manually moving an axis of a machine. Jogging either moves the axis a fixed amount for each key-press, or moves the axis at a constant speed as long as you hold down the key.

kernel-space See real-time [A](#).

Kinematics The position relationship between world coordinates [A](#) and joint coordinates [A](#) of a machine. There are two types of kinematics. Forward kinematics is used to calculate world coordinates from joint coordinates. Inverse kinematics is used for exactly opposite purpose. Note that kinematics does not take into account, the forces, moments etc. on the machine. It is for positioning only.

Lead-screw An screw that is rotated by a motor to move a table or other part of a machine. Lead-screws are usually either ball-screws [A](#) or acme screws [A](#), although conventional triangular threaded screws may be used where accuracy and long life are not as important as low cost.

Machine units The linear and angular units used for machine configuration. These units are used in the inifile. HAL pins and parameters are also generally in machine units.

MDI Manual Data Input. This is a mode of operation where the controller executes single lines of G-code [A](#) as they are typed by the operator.

NIST National Institute of Standards and Technology. An agency of the Department of Commerce in the United States.

Offsets

Part Program A description of a part, in a language that the controller can understand. For EMC, that language is RS-274/NGC, commonly known as G-code [A](#).

Program Units The linear and angular units used for part programs.

Rapid Fast, possibly less precise motion of the tool, commonly used to move between cuts. If the tool meets the material during a rapid, it is probably a bad thing!

Real-time Software that is intended to meet very strict timing deadlines. Under Linux, in order to meet these requirements it is necessary to install RTAI [A](#) or RTLINUX [A](#) and build the software to run in those special environments. For this reason real-time software runs in kernel-space.

RTAI Real Time Application Interface, see <http://www.aero.polimi.it/~rtai/>, one of two real-time extensions for Linux that EMC can use to achieve real-time [A](#) performance.

RTLINUX See <http://www.rtlinux.org> <http://www.rtlinux.org>, one of two real-time extensions for Linux that EMC can use to achieve real-time [A](#) performance.

RTAPI A portable interface to real-time operating systems including RTAI [A](#) and RTLINUX [A](#)

RS-274/NGC The formal name for the language used by EMC [A](#) part programs [A](#). See Chapter [13](#)

Servo Motor

Servo Loop

Spindle On a mill or drill, the spindle holds the cutting tool. On a lathe, the spindle holds the workpiece.

Stepper Motor A type of motor that turns in fixed steps. By counting steps, it is possible to determine how far the motor has turned. If the load exceeds the torque capability of the motor, it will skip one or more steps, causing position errors.

TASK The module within EMC [A](#) that coordinates the overall execution and interprets the part program.

Tcl/Tk A scripting language and graphical widget toolkit with which EMC's most popular GUI's [A](#) were written.

Units See "Machine Units", "Display Units", or "Program Units", above.

World Coordinates This is the absolute frame of reference. It gives coordinates in terms of a fixed reference frame that is attached to some point (generally the base) of the machine tool.

Appendix B

Legal Section

Handbook Copyright Terms

Copyright (c) 2000 LinuxCNC.org

Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.1 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with no Invariant Sections, no Front-Cover Texts, and one Back-Cover Text: "This EMC Handbook is the product of several authors writing for linuxCNC.org. As you find it to be of value in your work, we invite you to contribute to its revision and growth." A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License". If you do not find the license you may order a copy from Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307

B.1 GNU Free Documentation License Version 1.1, March 2000

Copyright (C) 2000 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

B.1.1 GNU Free Documentation License Version 1.1, March 2000

Copyright (C) 2000 Free Software Foundation, Inc. 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

0. PREAMBLE

The purpose of this License is to make a manual, textbook, or other written document "free" in the sense of freedom: to assure everyone the effective freedom to copy and redistribute it, with or without modifying it, either commercially or noncommercially. Secondly, this License preserves for the author and publisher a way to get credit for their work, while not being considered responsible for modifications made by others.

This License is a kind of "copyleft", which means that derivative works of the document must themselves be free in the same sense. It complements the GNU General Public License, which is a copyleft license designed for free software.

We have designed this License in order to use it for manuals for free software, because free software needs free documentation: a free program should come with manuals providing the same freedoms that the software does. But this License is not limited to software manuals; it can be used for any textual work, regardless of subject matter or whether it is published as a printed book. We recommend this License principally for works whose purpose is instruction or reference.

1. APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

This License applies to any manual or other work that contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it can be distributed under the terms of this License. The "Document", below, refers to any such manual or work. Any member of the public is a licensee, and is addressed as "you".

A "Modified Version" of the Document means any work containing the Document or a portion of it, either copied verbatim, or with modifications and/or translated into another language.

A "Secondary Section" is a named appendix or a front-matter section of the Document that deals exclusively with the relationship of the publishers or authors of the Document to the Document's overall subject (or to related matters) and contains nothing that could fall directly within that overall subject. (For example, if the Document is in part a textbook of mathematics, a Secondary Section may not explain any mathematics.) The relationship could be a matter of historical connection with the subject or with related matters, or of legal, commercial, philosophical, ethical or political position regarding them.

The "Invariant Sections" are certain Secondary Sections whose titles are designated, as being those of Invariant Sections, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License.

The "Cover Texts" are certain short passages of text that are listed, as Front-Cover Texts or Back-Cover Texts, in the notice that says that the Document is released under this License.

A "Transparent" copy of the Document means a machine-readable copy, represented in a format whose specification is available to the general public, whose contents can be viewed and edited directly and straightforwardly with generic text editors or (for images composed of pixels) generic paint programs or (for drawings) some widely available drawing editor, and that is suitable for input to text formatters or for automatic translation to a variety of formats suitable for input to text formatters. A copy made in an otherwise Transparent file format whose markup has been designed to thwart or discourage subsequent modification by readers is not Transparent. A copy that is not "Transparent" is called "Opaque".

Examples of suitable formats for Transparent copies include plain ASCII without markup, Texinfo input format, \LaTeX input format, SGML or XML using a publicly available DTD, and standard-conforming simple HTML designed for human modification. Opaque formats include PostScript, PDF, proprietary formats that can be read and edited only by proprietary word processors, SGML or XML for which the DTD and/or processing tools are not generally available, and the machine-generated HTML produced by some word processors for output purposes only.

The "Title Page" means, for a printed book, the title page itself, plus such following pages as are needed to hold, legibly, the material this License requires to appear in the title page. For works in formats which do not have any title page as such, "Title Page" means the text near the most prominent appearance of the work's title, preceding the beginning of the body of the text.

2. VERBATIM COPYING

You may copy and distribute the Document in any medium, either commercially or noncommercially, provided that this License, the copyright notices, and the license notice saying this License applies to the Document are reproduced in all copies, and that you add no other conditions whatsoever to those of this License. You may not use technical measures to obstruct or control the reading or further copying of the copies you make or distribute. However, you may accept compensation in exchange for copies. If you distribute a large enough number of copies you must also follow the conditions in section 3.

You may also lend copies, under the same conditions stated above, and you may publicly display copies.

3. COPYING IN QUANTITY

If you publish printed copies of the Document numbering more than 100, and the Document's license notice requires Cover Texts, you must enclose the copies in covers that carry, clearly and legibly, all these Cover Texts: Front-Cover Texts on the front cover, and Back-Cover Texts on the back cover. Both covers must also clearly and legibly identify you as the publisher of these copies. The front cover must present the full title with all words of the title equally prominent and visible. You may add other material on the covers in addition. Copying with changes limited to the covers, as long as they preserve the title of the Document and satisfy these conditions, can be treated as verbatim copying in other respects.

If the required texts for either cover are too voluminous to fit legibly, you should put the first ones listed (as many as fit reasonably) on the actual cover, and continue the rest onto adjacent pages.

If you publish or distribute Opaque copies of the Document numbering more than 100, you must either include a machine-readable Transparent copy along with each Opaque copy, or state in or with each Opaque copy a publicly-accessible computer-network location containing a complete Transparent copy of the Document, free

of added material, which the general network-using public has access to download anonymously at no charge using public-standard network protocols. If you use the latter option, you must take reasonably prudent steps, when you begin distribution of Opaque copies in quantity, to ensure that this Transparent copy will remain thus accessible at the stated location until at least one year after the last time you distribute an Opaque copy (directly or through your agents or retailers) of that edition to the public.

It is requested, but not required, that you contact the authors of the Document well before redistributing any large number of copies, to give them a chance to provide you with an updated version of the Document.

4. MODIFICATIONS

You may copy and distribute a Modified Version of the Document under the conditions of sections 2 and 3 above, provided that you release the Modified Version under precisely this License, with the Modified Version filling the role of the Document, thus licensing distribution and modification of the Modified Version to whoever possesses a copy of it. In addition, you must do these things in the Modified Version:

A. Use in the Title Page (and on the covers, if any) a title distinct from that of the Document, and from those of previous versions (which should, if there were any, be listed in the History section of the Document). You may use the same title as a previous version if the original publisher of that version gives permission. B. List on the Title Page, as authors, one or more persons or entities responsible for authorship of the modifications in the Modified Version, together with at least five of the principal authors of the Document (all of its principal authors, if it has less than five). C. State on the Title page the name of the publisher of the Modified Version, as the publisher. D. Preserve all the copyright notices of the Document. E. Add an appropriate copyright notice for your modifications adjacent to the other copyright notices. F. Include, immediately after the copyright notices, a license notice giving the public permission to use the Modified Version under the terms of this License, in the form shown in the Addendum below. G. Preserve in that license notice the full lists of Invariant Sections and required Cover Texts given in the Document's license notice. H. Include an unaltered copy of this License. I. Preserve the section entitled "History", and its title, and add to it an item stating at least the title, year, new authors, and publisher of the Modified Version as given on the Title Page. If there is no section entitled "History" in the Document, create one stating the title, year, authors, and publisher of the Document as given on its Title Page, then add an item describing the Modified Version as stated in the previous sentence. J. Preserve the network location, if any, given in the Document for public access to a Transparent copy of the Document, and likewise the network locations given in the Document for previous versions it was based on. These may be placed in the "History" section. You may omit a network location for a work that was published at least four years before the Document itself, or if the original publisher of the version it refers to gives permission. K. In any section entitled "Acknowledgements" or "Dedications", preserve the section's title, and preserve in the section all the substance and tone of each of the contributor acknowledgements and/or dedications given therein. L. Preserve all the Invariant Sections of the Document, unaltered in their text and in their titles. Section numbers or the equivalent are not considered part of the section titles. M. Delete any section entitled "Endorsements". Such a section may not be included in the Modified Version. N. Do not retitle any existing section as "Endorsements" or to conflict in title with any Invariant Section.

If the Modified Version includes new front-matter sections or appendices that qualify as Secondary Sections and contain no material copied from the Document, you may at your option designate some or all of these sections as invariant. To do this, add their titles to the list of Invariant Sections in the Modified Version's license notice. These titles must be distinct from any other section titles.

You may add a section entitled "Endorsements", provided it contains nothing but endorsements of your Modified Version by various parties—for example, statements of peer review or that the text has been approved by an organization as the authoritative definition of a standard.

You may add a passage of up to five words as a Front-Cover Text, and a passage of up to 25 words as a Back-Cover Text, to the end of the list of Cover Texts in the Modified Version. Only one passage of Front-Cover Text and one of Back-Cover Text may be added by (or through arrangements made by) any one entity. If the Document already includes a cover text for the same cover, previously added by you or by arrangement made by the same entity you are acting on behalf of, you may not add another; but you may replace the old one, on explicit permission from the previous publisher that added the old one.

The author(s) and publisher(s) of the Document do not by this License give permission to use their names for publicity for or to assert or imply endorsement of any Modified Version.

5. COMBINING DOCUMENTS

You may combine the Document with other documents released under this License, under the terms defined in section 4 above for modified versions, provided that you include in the combination all of the Invariant Sections of all of the original documents, unmodified, and list them all as Invariant Sections of your combined work in its license notice.

The combined work need only contain one copy of this License, and multiple identical Invariant Sections may be replaced with a single copy. If there are multiple Invariant Sections with the same name but different contents, make the title of each such section unique by adding at the end of it, in parentheses, the name of the original author or publisher of that section if known, or else a unique number. Make the same adjustment to the section titles in the list of Invariant Sections in the license notice of the combined work.

In the combination, you must combine any sections entitled "History" in the various original documents, forming one section entitled "History"; likewise combine any sections entitled "Acknowledgements", and any sections entitled "Dedications". You must delete all sections entitled "Endorsements."

6. COLLECTIONS OF DOCUMENTS

You may make a collection consisting of the Document and other documents released under this License, and replace the individual copies of this License in the various documents with a single copy that is included in the collection, provided that you follow the rules of this License for verbatim copying of each of the documents in all other respects.

You may extract a single document from such a collection, and distribute it individually under this License, provided you insert a copy of this License into the extracted document, and follow this License in all other respects regarding verbatim copying of that document.

7. AGGREGATION WITH INDEPENDENT WORKS

A compilation of the Document or its derivatives with other separate and independent documents or works, in or on a volume of a storage or distribution medium, does not as a whole count as a Modified Version of the Document, provided no compilation copyright is claimed for the compilation. Such a compilation is called an "aggregate", and this License does not apply to the other self-contained works thus compiled with the Document, on account of their being thus compiled, if they are not themselves derivative works of the Document.

If the Cover Text requirement of section 3 is applicable to these copies of the Document, then if the Document is less than one quarter of the entire aggregate, the Document's Cover Texts may be placed on covers that surround only the Document within the aggregate. Otherwise they must appear on covers around the whole aggregate.

8. TRANSLATION

Translation is considered a kind of modification, so you may distribute translations of the Document under the terms of section 4. Replacing Invariant Sections with translations requires special permission from their copyright holders, but you may include translations of some or all Invariant Sections in addition to the original versions of these Invariant Sections. You may include a translation of this License provided that you also include the original English version of this License. In case of a disagreement between the translation and the original English version of this License, the original English version will prevail.

9. TERMINATION

You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Document except as expressly provided for under this License. Any other attempt to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Document is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

10. FUTURE REVISIONS OF THIS LICENSE

The Free Software Foundation may publish new, revised versions of the GNU Free Documentation License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. See <http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/>.

Each version of the License is given a distinguishing version number. If the Document specifies that a particular numbered version of this License "or any later version" applies to it, you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that specified version or of any later version that has been published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation. If the Document does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published (not as a draft) by the Free Software Foundation.

ADDENDUM: How to use this License for your documents

To use this License in a document you have written, include a copy of the License in the document and put the following copyright and license notices just after the title page:

Copyright (c) YEAR YOUR NAME. Permission is granted to copy, distribute and/or modify this document under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License, Version 1.1 or any later version published by the Free Software Foundation; with the Invariant Sections being LIST THEIR TITLES, with the Front-Cover Texts being LIST, and with the Back-Cover Texts being LIST. A copy of the license is included in the section entitled "GNU Free Documentation License".

If you have no Invariant Sections, write "with no Invariant Sections" instead of saying which ones are invariant. If you have no Front-Cover Texts, write "no Front-Cover Texts" instead of "Front-Cover Texts being LIST"; likewise for Back-Cover Texts.

If your document contains nontrivial examples of program code, we recommend releasing these examples in parallel under your choice of free software license, such as the GNU General Public License, to permit their use in free software.

Index

- [.axisrc](#), [107](#)
- [.emcrc](#), [31](#)
- ABORT, [10](#)
- ACEX1K, [86](#)
- acme screw, [206](#)
- ANGULAR UNITS, [36](#)
- Auto, [8](#), [9](#), [111](#), [116](#), [119](#), [126](#)
- axes, [127](#)
- axes, primary linear, [127](#)
- axes, rotational, [128](#)
- axes, secondary linear, [128](#)
- AXIS, [5](#), [32](#), [95](#), [105](#)
- axis, [206](#)
- AXIS (inifile section), [36](#)
- backlash, [206](#)
- backlash compensation, [206](#)
- backplot, [116](#), [123](#)
- ball nut, [206](#)
- ball screw, [206](#)
- BASE PERIOD, [34](#)
- block delete, [132](#)
- blocks, [47](#)
- break, [165](#)
- Bridgeport, [4](#)
- call, [164](#)
- ClassicLadder, [47](#)
- CNC, [4](#), [44](#), [96](#), [115](#), [206](#)
- comment, [140](#)
- comments, [32](#)
- continue, [165](#)
- controlled point, [129](#)
- coolant, [101](#), [113](#), [128](#), [130](#)
- coordinate measuring machine, [206](#)
- coordinate systems, [135](#)
- CVS, [4](#)
- DISPLAY, [32](#)
- DISPLAY (inifile section), [33](#)
- display units, [207](#)
- do, [165](#)
- DRO, [207](#)
- dwell, [130](#)
- EDM, [207](#)
- else, [165](#)
- EMC, [207](#)
- EMC (inifile section), [33](#)
- EMCIO, [7](#), [207](#)
- EMCIO (inifile section), [40](#)
- EMCMOT, [207](#)
- EMCMOT (inifile section), [34](#)
- EMCTASK, [7](#)
- encoder, [39](#), [47](#), [207](#)
- endif, [165](#)
- endsub, [164](#)
- endwhile, [165](#)
- ESTOP, [10](#), [95](#), [97](#), [110](#), [111](#), [120](#)
- feed, [207](#)
- feed override, [10](#), [96](#), [102](#), [110](#), [122](#), [128](#), [207](#)
- feed rate, [130](#), [207](#)
- feedback, [207](#)
- FERROR, [37](#)
- G-Code, [207](#)
- G-code, [8](#)
- G0, [143](#), [144](#)
- G1, [143](#), [145](#)
- G10, [143](#), [148](#)
- G17, [143](#), [148](#)
- G18, [143](#), [148](#)
- G19, [143](#), [148](#)
- G2, [143](#), [145](#)
- G20, [143](#), [148](#)
- G21, [143](#), [148](#)
- G28, [143](#), [148](#)
- G3, [143](#), [145](#)
- G30, [143](#), [148](#)
- G33, [143](#), [147](#)
- G33.1, [147](#)
- G38.2, [143](#), [149](#)
- G38.x, [143](#), [149](#)
- G4, [143](#), [147](#)
- G40, [143](#), [149](#)
- G41, [143](#), [149](#)
- G41.1, [143](#), [149](#)
- G42, [143](#), [149](#)
- G42.1, [143](#), [149](#)
- G43, [143](#), [150](#)
- G43.1, [143](#), [150](#)
- G49, [143](#), [150](#)
- G53, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#)
- G54, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)

G55, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G56, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G57, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G58, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G59, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G59.1, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G59.2, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G59.3, [143](#), [151](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G61, [151](#)
 G61.1, [151](#)
 G64, [151](#)
 G76, [152](#)
 G80, [143](#), [152](#), [191](#)
 G81, [143](#), [153](#), [155](#), [192](#)
 G82, [143](#), [156](#), [194](#), [195](#)
 G83, [143](#), [156](#)
 G84, [143](#), [156](#), [195](#)
 G85, [143](#), [156](#), [196](#)
 G86, [143](#), [157](#), [196](#)
 G87, [143](#), [157](#), [196](#)
 G88, [143](#), [157](#), [198](#)
 G89, [143](#), [153](#), [157](#), [198](#)
 G90, [143](#), [157](#)
 G91, [143](#), [157](#)
 G92, [143](#), [158](#), [184](#), [186](#)
 G92.1, [143](#), [158](#), [187](#)
 G92.2, [143](#), [158](#), [187](#)
 G92.3, [143](#), [158](#), [187](#)
 G93, [143](#), [158](#)
 G94, [143](#), [158](#)
 G95, [158](#)
 G96, [159](#)
 G97, [159](#)
 G98, [143](#), [159](#), [198](#)
 G99, [143](#), [159](#), [198](#)
 GNU-Linux, [3](#)
 GPL, [4](#)
 GUI, [207](#)

HAL, [5](#), [31](#), [44](#)
 HAL (inifile section), [35](#)
 HAL Component, [46](#)
 HAL Function, [46](#)
 HAL Parameter, [46](#)
 HAL Physical-Pin, [46](#)
 HAL Pin, [46](#)
 HAL Signal, [46](#)
 HAL Thread, [47](#)
 HAL Type, [46](#)
 hal-ax5214h, [48](#)
 hal-m5i20, [48](#)
 hal-motenc, [48](#)
 hal-parport, [48](#)
 hal-ppmc, [48](#)
 hal-stg, [48](#)
 hal-vti, [48](#)
 halcmd, [48](#)

halmeter, [48](#)
 halscope, [48](#)
 halui, [47](#)
 HOME, [43](#)
 home, [110](#), [207](#)
 HOME IGNORE LIMITS, [43](#)
 HOME IS SHARED, [43](#)
 HOME LATCH VEL, [41](#)
 HOME OFFSET, [43](#)
 HOME SEARCH VEL, [37](#), [41](#)
 HOME SEQUENCE, [43](#)
 HOME USE INDEX, [43](#)

if, [165](#)
 INI, [6](#), [31](#), [207](#)
 INPUT SCALE, [39](#)
 Installing: LiveCD, [14](#)
 Installing: manual, [14](#)
 Installing: script, [14](#)
 iocontrol, [47](#)

jog, [208](#)
 jog speed, [102](#), [110](#)
 joint coordinates, [208](#)

joystick, [5](#), [32](#)
 kinematics, [208](#)

lathe, [105](#)
 lead screw, [208](#)
 LINEAR UNITS, [35](#)
 Linux, [4](#)
 loop, [208](#)

M0, [143](#), [160](#)
 M1, [143](#), [160](#)
 M100..199, [143](#), [163](#)
 M2, [143](#), [160](#)
 M3, [143](#), [161](#)
 M30, [143](#), [160](#)
 M4, [143](#), [161](#)
 M48, [143](#), [161](#)
 M49, [143](#), [161](#)
 M5, [143](#), [161](#)
 M50, [162](#)
 M51, [162](#)
 M52, [162](#)
 M53, [162](#)
 M6, [143](#), [161](#)
 M60, [143](#), [160](#)
 M62, [162](#)
 M63, [162](#)
 M64, [162](#)
 M65, [162](#)
 M66, [162](#)
 M7, [143](#), [161](#)
 M8, [143](#), [161](#)

- M9, [143](#), [161](#)
- machine on, [97](#)
- machine units, [208](#)
- Manual, [9](#), [96](#), [99](#), [111](#), [118](#), [125](#)
- MAX ACCELERATION, [36](#)
- MAX LIMIT, [36](#)
- MAX VELOCITY, [36](#)
- MDI, [8](#), [9](#), [96](#), [101](#), [110](#), [111](#), [120](#), [208](#)
- MIN FERROR, [37](#)
- MIN LIMIT, [36](#)
- mini, [5](#), [32](#), [115](#)
- MIST, [111](#)
- mode, [159](#)
- motion, [47](#)

- NIST, [3](#), [208](#)
- NML, [31](#)

- O Codes, [164](#)
- offsets, [208](#)
- OMAC, [3](#)
- open, [112](#)
- Open Source, [13](#)
- OpenGL, [95](#)
- operator precedence, [140](#)
- optional block delete, [129](#)
- optional program stop, [129](#), [132](#)
- optional stop, [112](#)

- pallet shuttle, [128](#)
- parallel port, [71](#)
- parameters, [133](#)
- part Program, [208](#)
- path control mode, [131](#)
- pause, [112](#)
- pid, [47](#)
- PLC, [7](#)
- Pluto-P, [86](#)
- pluto-servo, [88](#)
- pluto-servo alternate pin functions, [90](#)
- pluto-servo pinout, [89](#)
- pluto-step, [91](#)
- pluto-step pinout, [92](#)
- pluto-step timings, [92](#)
- position: absolute, [97](#)
- Position: Actual, [11](#)
- position: actual, [97](#)
- Position: Commanded, [11](#)
- position: commanded, [97](#)
- Position: Machine, [11](#)
- Position: Relative, [11](#)
- position: relative, [97](#)
- preview plot, [98](#)
- program extents, [98](#)
- program units, [208](#)
- Python, [95](#), [105](#)

- rapid, [208](#)
- RCS, [3](#)
- real-time, [208](#)
- resume, [112](#)
- return, [164](#)
- RS274NGC, [127](#), [136](#), [208](#)
- RS274NGC STARTUP CODE, [33](#)
- RTAI, [208](#)
- RTAPI, [208](#)
- RTLINUX, [208](#)
- run, [112](#)

- servo motor, [208](#)
- SERVO PERIOD, [34](#)
- Sherline, [4](#), [115](#)
- siggen, [47](#)
- spindle, [100](#), [111](#), [113](#), [128](#), [208](#)
- spindle speed control, [25](#)
- spindle speed override, [102](#), [110](#), [128](#)
- spindle-synchronized motion, [25](#)
- step, [112](#)
- stepgen, [47](#)
- stepper motor, [208](#)
- sub, [164](#)
- supply, [47](#)

- TASK, [209](#)
- TASK (inifile section), [35](#)
- TBL, [31](#)
- Tcl, [109](#)
- Tk, [95](#), [109](#), [209](#)
- tkemc, [5](#), [32](#), [109](#)
- tool carousel, [128](#)
- tool changer, [128](#)
- Touch Off, [95](#)
- TRAJ (inifile section), [35](#)
- TRAJ PERIOD, [35](#)

- Ubuntu, [3](#), [13](#)
- UNITS, [36](#)
- units, [6](#), [12](#), [130](#), [209](#)

- VAR, [31](#)
- verify, [112](#)

- while, [165](#)
- world coordinates, [209](#)

- xemc, [5](#)